RHEINISCH-
WESTFALISCH

# Cryptography - Lecture notes 

## Mohamed Barakat and Timo Hanke

Version April 16, 2012

Department of mathematics, University of Kaiserslautern, 67653 KAISERSLAUTERN, GERMANY E-mail address: barakat@mathematik.uni-kl.de Lehrstuhl D für Mathematik, RWTH Aachen University, Templergraben 64, 52062 Aachen, Germany E-mail address: hanke@math.rwth-aachen.de

## Preface

These lecture notes are based on the course "Kryptographie" given by Timo Hanke at RWTH Aachen University in the summer semester of 2010. They were amended and extended by several topics, as well as translated into English, by Mohammed Barakat for his course "Cryptography" at TU Kaiserslautern in the winter semester of 2010/11. Besides the literature given in the bibliography section, our sources include lectures notes of courses held by Michael Cuntz, Florian Hess, Gerhard Hiss and Jürgen Müller. We would like to thank them all.

Mohammed Barakat would also like to thank the audience of the course for their helpful remarks and questions. Special thanks to Henning Kopp for his numerous improvements suggestions. Also thanks to Jochen Kall who helped locating further errors and typos. Daniel Berger helped me with subtle formatting issues. Many thanks Daniel.

## Contents

Preface
Chapter 1. General Concepts ..... 1

1. Algorithms and their runtime ..... 1
2. Multi-valued maps ..... 2
3. Alphabets and the word semi-group ..... 3
4. Cryptosystems ..... 3
4.a. Stream ciphers ..... 4
4.b. Symmetric and asymmetric cryptosystems ..... 4
4.c. Security properties ..... 5
4.d. Attacks ..... 5
4.e. Security models ..... 6
Chapter 2. Information Theory ..... 7
5. Some probability theory ..... 7
1.a. Probability spaces ..... 7
1.b. Random variables ..... 8
6. Perfect Secrecy ..... 9
2.a. General assumptions ..... 9
2.b. Perfect secrecy ..... 10
2.c. Transitivity ..... 10
2.d. Characterization ..... 12
7. Entropy ..... 13
3.a. Entropy ..... 13
3.b. Encodings ..... 14
3.c. Entropy of a natural language ..... 15
3.d. Further properties ..... 16
8. Entropy in cryptosystems ..... 17
4.a. Free systems ..... 20
4.b. Perfect systems ..... 22
Chapter 3. Pseudo-Random Sequences ..... 23
9. Introduction ..... 23
10. Linear recurrence equations and pseudo-random bit generators ..... 24
2.a. Linear algebra ..... 25
2.b. Period length ..... 27
11. Finite fields 28
3.a. Field extensions 28
3.b. Order of field elements 29
3.c. Some field theory 30
3.d. Finite fields 31
3.e. Irreducible polynomials over finite fields 33
3.f. Primitive polynomials 35
12. Statistical tests 36
4.a. Statistical randomness 37
4.b. Unpredictability 38
13. Cryptographically secure pseudo-random bit generators 39
5.a. Empirical security 40
5.b. Provable security 41
5.c. A CSPRBG based cryptosystem 42

Chapter 4. AES and Block Ciphers 43

1. Block ciphers 43
1.a. AES, the Advanced Encryption Standard 43
1.b. Block cipher modes of operation 45

Chapter 5. Candidates of One-Way Functions 47

1. Complexity classes 47
2. Squaring modulo $n \quad 48$
2.a. Quadratic residues 49
2.b. Square roots 51
2.c. One-way functions 52
2.d. Trapdoors 53
2.e. The BLUM-GOLDWASSER construction 54

Chapter 6. Public Cryptosystems 57

1. RSA 57
2. Elgamal 59
3. The Rabin cryptosystem 60
4. Security models 61
4.a. IND-CCA2 62
4.b. OAEP 62

Chapter 7. Primality tests 65

1. Probabilistic primality tests 65
1.a. Fermat test 65
1.b. Miller-Rabin test 66
2. Deterministic primality tests 69
2.a. The AKS-algorithm 69

Chapter 8. Integer Factorization 73

1. Pollard's $p-1$ method ..... 73
2. Pollard's $\rho$ method ..... 74
3. Fermat's method ..... 74
4. DIXON's method ..... 75
5. The quadratic sieve ..... 76
Chapter 9. Elliptic curves ..... 79
6. The projective space ..... 79
1.a. Homogenous coordinates and affine charts ..... 79
1.b. Algebraic sets and homogenization ..... 80
1.c. Elliptic curves ..... 81
1.c.i. Singularities ..... 82
7. The group structure $(E,+)$ ..... 83
2.a. Tangents ..... 84
2.b. A formula for $-P:=P * O$ where $P \neq O$ ..... 86
2.c. A formula for $P * Q$ where $P, Q \neq O$ ..... 86
2.d. A formula for $P+Q$ where $P, Q \neq O$ ..... 87
8. Elliptic curves over finite fields ..... 88
3.a. Squares in finite fields ..... 88
3.b. Counting points ..... 88
3.c. Finding points ..... 90
3.d. The structure of the group $(E,+)$ ..... 90
9. LENSTRA's factorization method ..... 91
10. Elliptic curves cryptography (ECC) ..... 93
5.a. A coding function for elliptic curves ..... 93
Chapter 10. Attacks on the discrete logarithm problem ..... 95
11. Specific attacks ..... 95
1.a. The index calculus ..... 95
12. General attacks ..... 96
2.a. Baby step, giant step ..... 97
Chapter 11. Digital signatures ..... 99
13. Definitions ..... 99
14. Signatures using OWF with trapdoors ..... 100
15. Hash functions ..... 100
16. Signatures using OWF without trapdoors ..... 101
4.a. Elgamal signature scheme ..... 101
4.b. ECDSA ..... 102
Appendix A. Some analysis ..... 103
17. Real functions ..... 103
1.a. JENSEN's inequality ..... 103
1.b. The normal distribution ..... 103

Bibliography 105

## CHAPTER 1

## General Concepts

For an overview see the slides (in German)
http://www.mathematik.uni-kl.de/~barakat/Lehre/WS10/Cryptography/material/Crypto_talk.pdf

## 1. Algorithms and their runtime

Definition 1.1. An algorithm is called deterministic if the output only depends on

Begin Lect. 2, last 30 min. the input. Otherwise probabilistic (or randomized).

Remark 1.2.
(1) The output of a deterministic algorithm is a function of the input.
(2) The steps of a probabilistic algorithm might depend on a random source.
(3) If the random source is regarded as an additional input, the probabilistic algorithm becomes deterministic.
(4) Probabilistic algorithms often enough supersede deterministic ones.

Definition 1.3 ( $O$-notation). Let $f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ be a function. Define

$$
O(f):=\left\{h: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \mid \exists c=c(h) \in \mathbb{R}, N=N(h) \in \mathbb{N}: h(n) \leq c f(n) \forall n \geq N\right\}
$$

$O$ is called the big Landau $O$. Instead of $g \in O(f)$ one often writes $g=O(f)$.
Remark 1.4. Let $f, g: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$.
(1) $f \in O(f)$.
(2) $c O(f)=O(f)$ for all $c \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$.
(3) $O(f) O(g)=O(f g)$.

Example 1.5.
(1) $O(1)=\left\{f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \mid f\right.$ is bounded $\}$
(2) $O\left(5 n^{3}-3 n-2\right)=O\left(n^{3}\right)$.
(3) $O(f) \subset O(g)$ for $f \leq g$.

Definition 1.6. The runtime ${ }^{1} t_{A}(x)$ of an algorithm $A$ for an input $x$ is the number of (elementary) steps ${ }^{2}$ (or operations) of the algorithm (when executed by a computer $=$

[^0]multitape Turing machine). The algorithm is said to lie in $O(f)$ for $f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ if the runtime of the algorithm is bounded (above) by $f(s)$, where $s$ is the "size" 3 of the input $x$.

DEFINITION 1.7. An algorithm is called a polynomial (runtime) algorithm if it lies in $O\left(n^{k}\right)$ for some $k \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. Otherwise an exponential (runtime) algorithm.

## Begin

Lect. 3

Example 1.8.
(1) Addition and subtraction of $n$-digit natural numbers lies in $O(n)$. Cannot be improved further.
(2) Multiplication and division of $n$-digit natural numbers lies in $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ (schoolbook algorithm). Can be improved: Schönhage-Strassen multiplication algorithm lies in $O(n \log n \log \log n)$. Let $M(n)$ denote the runtime of the multiplication algorithm.
(3) Factorial of a (fixed) natural number $m$ lies in $O\left(m^{2} \log m\right)$. Can be improved!

## 2. Multi-valued maps

DEFINITION 2.1. A multi-valued map from $M$ to $N$ is a map $F: M \rightarrow \mathbf{2}^{N}$ with $F(m) \neq \emptyset$ for all $m \in M$, where $\mathbf{2}^{N}$ denotes the power set of $N$. We write $F: M \rightsquigarrow N$ and write $F(m)=n$ instead of $n \in F(m)$. Further:
(1) $F$ is called injective if the sets $F(m)$ are pairwise disjoint.
(2) $F$ is called surjective if $\bigcup_{m \in M} F(m)=N$.
(3) $F$ is called bijective if it is injective and surjective.
(4) For a surjective $F: M \rightsquigarrow N$ define

$$
F^{-1}: N \rightsquigarrow M, \quad F^{-1}(n):=\{m \in M \mid n \in F(m)\} .
$$

$F^{-1}$ is called the (multi-valued) inverse of $F$.
(5) For $F, F^{\prime}: M \rightsquigarrow N$ we write $F \subset F^{\prime}$ if $F(m) \subset F^{\prime}(m)$ for all $m \in M$.
(6) A multi-valued map $F$ defines a map $M \rightarrow N$ iff $|F(m)|=1$ for all $m \in M$. We then say $F$ is a map and denote the corresponding map $M \rightarrow N$ again by $F$.

## Exercise 2.2.

(1) Let $F, F^{\prime}: M \rightsquigarrow N$ be two multi-valued maps with $F \subset F^{\prime}$. Then $F^{\prime}$ injective implies $F$ injective.
(2) Let $F: M \rightsquigarrow N$ be surjective. Then
(a) $F^{-1}$ is surjective and $\left(F^{-1}\right)^{-1}=F$.
(b) $F$ is injective (and hence bijective) iff $F^{-1}$ is a (surjective) map.
(3) Each bijective multi-valued map $F: M \rightsquigarrow N$ is the multi-valued inverse $g^{-1}$ of a surjective map $g: N \rightarrow M$ (viewed as a multi-valued map).

[^1]
## 3. Alphabets and the word semi-group

Definition 3.1. An alphabet $A$ is a finite nonempty set. Its cardinality $|A|$ is called the length of the alphabet and its elements are called letters. Further:
(1) An element $w=\left(w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n}\right) \in A^{n}$ is called a word in $A$ of length $\ell(w)=n$. We write $w=w_{1} \ldots w_{n}$.
(2) Set $A^{\bullet}:=\bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}} A^{n}$ with $A^{0}:=\{\varepsilon\}$, where $\varepsilon$ is a symbol outside of the alphabet denoting the empty word of length 0 .
(3) The concatenation of words is a binary operation $\cdot$ on $A^{\bullet}$ defined by $\left(v_{1} \ldots v_{\ell(v)}\right)$. $\left(w_{1} \ldots w_{\ell(w)}\right):=v_{1} \ldots v_{\ell(v)} w_{1} \ldots w_{\ell(w)}$.

Example 3.2.
(1) $A=\{\mathrm{a}, \ldots, \mathrm{z}\}$, crypto $\in A^{\bullet}$.
(2) $A=\{0,1\}, 1010010 \in A^{\bullet}$.

Remark 3.3. The pair $\left(A^{\bullet}, \cdot\right)$ is a semi-group with neutral element $\varepsilon$. It is Abelian iff $|A|=1$. Further $\ell(v \cdot w)=\ell(v)+\ell(w)$ for $v, w \in A^{\bullet}$, i.e., $\ell:\left(A^{\bullet}, \cdot\right) \rightarrow\left(\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0},+\right)$ is a semi-group homomorphism.

## 4. Cryptosystems

Definition 4.1. A cryptosystem is a 5 -tuple ( $\left.P \subset A_{1}^{\bullet}, C \subset A_{2}^{\bullet}, \kappa: K^{\prime} \rightarrow K, \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{D}\right)$ where

- $A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ are alphabets,
- $\kappa$ is bijective,
- $\mathcal{E}=\left(\mathcal{E}_{e}\right)_{e \in K}$ a family of multi-valued maps $\mathcal{E}_{e}: P \rightsquigarrow C$, and
- $\mathcal{D}=\left(\mathcal{D}_{d}\right)_{d \in K^{\prime}}$ a family of surjective maps $\mathcal{D}_{d}: C \rightarrow P$,
such that

$$
\mathcal{E}_{\kappa(d)} \subset \mathcal{D}_{d}^{-1} \quad \text { for all } d \in K^{\prime}
$$

(in the sense of Definition 2.1(5)). We further require that $\kappa, \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{D}$ are realized by polynomial runtime algorithms, where only $\mathcal{E}$ is allowed to be probabilistic. We call

- $A_{1}$ the plaintext alphabet,
- $P$ the set of plaintexts,
- $A_{2}$ the ciphertext alphabet,
- $C$ the set of ciphertexts,
- $K$ the encryption key space,
- $K^{\prime}$ the decryption key space,
- $\kappa$ the key-correspondence,
- $\mathcal{E}$ the encryption algorithm,
- $\mathcal{E}_{e}$ the encryption algorithm with key $e$ (used by the sender),
- $\mathcal{D}$ the decryption algorithm, and
- $\mathcal{D}_{d}$ the decryption algorithm with key $d$ (used by the receiver).

Often enough we take $A_{1}=A_{2}=: A$ and $P:=A^{\bullet}$.

ExERCISE 4.2. The multi-valued map $\mathcal{E}_{e}$ is injective for all $e \in K$.

Principle 4.3 (Kerckhoff's Principle, 1883).
First formulation: The cryptographic strength of a cryptosystem should not depend on the secrecy of the cryptosystem but only on the secrecy of the decryption key $d$ (see Remark 4.8 below).
Second formulation: The attacker knows the cryptosystem.
A simple justification of this principle is that it becomes increasingly difficult to keep an algorithm secret (security by obscurity) if it is used (by an eventually growing number of persons) over a long period of time. On the contrary: It is a lot easier to frequently change and exchange keys between two sides, use different keys for different communications, and destroy keys after usage. And for the same reason any cryptographic weakness of a public algorithm cannot remain secret for a long period of time.

Remark 4.4.
(1) Kerckhoff's Principle is nowadays a widely accepted principle.
(2) Major drawback: Your opponent/enemy ${ }^{4}$ can use the same thoroughly tested and publicly trusted algorithm.

## 4.a. Stream ciphers.

DEFINITION 4.5. A cryptosystem is called a stream cipher if a word $p=v_{1} \ldots v_{l} \in$ $A_{1}^{l} \cap P$ is encrypted into a word $\mathcal{E}_{e}(p)=c=c_{0} \cdot w_{1} \ldots w_{l} \in C \subset A_{2}^{\bullet}$ with $c_{0} \in C$ and where the letter $w_{i}$ does not depend on $v_{i+1}, \ldots, v_{l}$ (but only on $e$, the letters $v_{1}, \ldots, v_{i}$, and the random source).

REMARK 4.6. This property of being a stream cipher can be relaxed to $N$-letter blocks simply by replacing $A_{1}$ by $A_{1}^{N}$. If $N$ is "small" one still speaks about a stream cipher, where small means effectively enumerable in a "reasonable" amount of time. For example $\{0,1\}^{32}$ can still be regarded as an alphabet ${ }^{5}$ but no longer ${ }^{6}\{0,1\}^{128}$.

Begin
Lect. 4

## 4.b. Symmetric and asymmetric cryptosystems.

Definition 4.7. A cryptosystem is called symmetric or a secret key cryptosystem (SKC) if computing images under $\kappa$ is feasible ${ }^{7}$, otherwise an asymmetric or a public key cryptosystem (PKC). The corresponding key pairs $(d, e)$ are called symmetric or asymmetric, respectively.

[^2]Remark 4.8.
(1) In many (and quite relevant) symmetric cryptosystems $K=K^{\prime}$ and $\kappa=\mathrm{id}_{K}$. We then write $(P, C, K, \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{D})$. The most prominent example is the XOR-cryptosystem.
(2) Whereas the encryption key $e$ of an asymmetric cryptosystem can be published (public key), e must be kept secret for a symmetric cryptosystem. $d$ is in any case called the secret key.
(3) As algorithms implementing symmetric cryptosystem are typically more efficient than those of asymmetric ones, symmetric systems are used for almost all the cryptographic traffic, while asymmetric systems are used to exchange the needed symmetric keys.

## 4.c. Security properties.

Definition 4.9. A cryptosystem is said to have the security property ${ }^{8}$
(1) onewayness ${ }^{9}$ (OW) if it is unfeasible for the attacker to decrypt an arbitrary given ciphertext.
(2) indistinguishability ${ }^{10}$ (IND) or semantic security if it is unfeasible for the attacker to associate to a given ciphertext one among several known plaintexts.
(3) non-malleability ${ }^{11}$ (NM) if it is unfeasible for the attacker to modify a given ciphertext in such a way, that the corresponding plaintext is sensible.

REmARK 4.10. One can show that: $\mathrm{NM} \Longrightarrow \mathrm{IND} \Longrightarrow$ OW.

## 4.d. Attacks.

Definition 4.11. One distinguishes the following different attack scenarios ${ }^{12}$ :
(1) Ciphertext-only attack (COA): The attacker only receives ciphertexts.
(2) Known-plaintext attack (KPA): The attacker receives pairs consisting of a plaintext and the corresponding ciphertext.
(3) Chosen-plaintext attack (CPA): The attacker can once choose plaintexts and then receive their corresponding ciphertexts. "Once" in the sense that he is not allowed to alter his choice depending on what he receives.
(4) Adaptive chosen-ciphertext attack (CCA2): The attacker is able to adaptively choose ciphertexts and receive their corresponding plaintexts. "Adaptive" means that he is allowed to alter his choice depending on what he receives. If he is challenged to decrypt a ciphertext he is of course not allowed to receive its plain text. But normally such attacks are intended to recover the decryption key $d$ of the decryption algorithm $\mathcal{D}_{d}$.

[^3]Remark 4.12.
(1) CPA is trivial for public key systems.
(2) One can show that CCA2 $\succ$ CPA $\succ$ known-plaintext $\succ$ ciphertext-only attacks, where $\succ$ means "stronger than".

## 4.e. Security models.

Definition 4.13. A security model is a security property together with an attack scenario.

Remark 4.14. One can show that

$$
\text { NM-CCA2 }=\text { IND-CCA2. }
$$

IND-CCA2, i.e., indistinguishability under chosen-ciphertext attack, is the strongest security model of an asymmetric probabilistic cryptosystem. To illustrate IND-CCA2 consider the following game between a challenger ${ }^{13} \mathrm{H}$ and an attacker A :
(1) H generates a secret key $d \in K^{\prime}$ and publishes $e=\kappa(d)$.
(2) A has access to the decryption machine $\mathcal{D}_{d}$ (but not to the secret key $d$ ) and is able to perform arbitrary computations.
(3) A generates two different plaintexts $p_{0}, p_{1} \in P$ and hands them to H .
(4) H chooses randomly an $i \in\{0,1\}$ and sends $c=\mathcal{E}_{e}\left(p_{i}\right)$ back to A , challenging him to correctly guess $i$.
(5) A has access to the decryption machine $\mathcal{D}_{d}$ (but not to the secret key $d$ ) and is able to perform arbitrary computations, except deciphering $c$.
(6) A guesses which $i$ was chosen by H , (only) depending on the computations he was able to do.
IND-CCA2 means that the probability of A correctly guessing $i$ is not higher than $\frac{1}{2}$.

[^4]
## CHAPTER 2

## Information Theory

## 1. Some probability theory

## 1.a. Probability spaces.

Definition 1.1. Let $\Omega$ be a finite nonempty set and $\mu: \Omega \rightarrow[0,1]$ with $\sum_{x \in \Omega} \mu(x)=1$. For $A \subset \Omega$ define $\mu(A)=\sum_{x \in A} \mu(x)$.
(1) $(\Omega, \mu)$ is called a finite probability space ${ }^{1}$.
(2) $\mu$ is called a probability measure ${ }^{2}$ or probability distribution ${ }^{3}$.
(3) A subset $A \subset \Omega$ is called an event ${ }^{4}$, while an element $x \in \Omega$ an elementary event ${ }^{5}$.
(4) The distribution $\bar{\mu}$ defined by $\bar{\mu}(x):=\frac{1}{|\Omega|}$ is called the (discrete) uniform distribution ${ }^{6}$ on $\Omega$.
(5) If $\mu(B)>0$ define the conditional probability ${ }^{7}$

$$
\mu(A \mid B):=\frac{\mu(A \cap B)}{\mu(B)},
$$

the probability of $A$ given the occurrence of $B$.
(6) The events $A$ and $B$ are called (statistically) independent ${ }^{8}$ if

$$
\mu(A \cap B)=\mu(A) \mu(B)
$$

Exercise 1.2. Let $(\Omega, \mu)$ be a finite probability space and $A, B$ events in $\Omega$.
(1) $\mu(\emptyset)=0, \mu(\Omega)=1,0 \leq \mu(A) \leq 1$, and $\mu(\Omega \backslash A)=1-\mu(A)$.
(2) $A \subset B \subset \Omega \Longrightarrow \mu(A) \leq \mu(B)$.
(3) $\mu(A \cap B)=\mu(A \mid B) \mu(B)$.
(4) Bayes' formula:

$$
\mu(A \mid B)=\mu(B \mid A) \frac{\mu(A)}{\mu(B)}
$$

if $\mu(A), \mu(B)>0$.

[^5](5) $A$ and $B$ are independent iff $\mu(B)=0$ or $\mu(A \mid B)=\mu(A)$.
(6) For $\mu(A), \mu(B)>0: \mu(A \mid B)=\mu(A)$ iff $\mu(B \mid A)=\mu(B)$.

## 1.b. Random variables.

Definition 1.3. Let $(\Omega, \mu)$ be a finite probability space.
(1) A map $X: \Omega \rightarrow M$ is called an ( $M$-valued discrete) random variable ${ }^{9}$ on $\Omega$.
(2) The distribution $\mu_{X}$ defined by

$$
\mu_{X}(m):=\mu_{X}(X=m) \text { for } m \in M
$$

is called the distribution of $X$, where $\{X=m\}$ or simply $X=m$ stands for the preimage set $X^{-1}(\{m\})$. It follows that $\mu_{X}(A)=\mu_{X}(X \in A)$ for $A \subset M$, where, again, $\{X \in A\}$ or simply $X \in A$ stands for the preimage set $X^{-1}(A)$.
(3) If $M$ is a subset of $\mathbb{C}$ define the expected value ${ }^{10}$

$$
E(X):=\sum_{x \in \Omega} X(x) \mu(x) \in \mathbb{C}
$$

(4) Let $X_{i}: \Omega \rightarrow M_{i}, i=1, \ldots n$ be random variables. For $m_{i} \in M$ define the product probability measure or product distribution

$$
\mu_{X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}}\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right):=\mu\left(X_{1}=m_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}=m_{n}\right):=\mu\left(\bigcap_{i=1}^{n}\left\{X_{i}=m_{i}\right\}\right) .
$$

Let $X: \Omega \rightarrow M$ and $Y: \Omega \rightarrow N$ be two random variables.
(5) $X$ is called uniformly distributed ${ }^{11}$ if $\mu_{X}(m)=\frac{1}{|M|}$ for all $m \in M$.
(6) For $\mu_{Y}(n)>0$ define the conditional probability

$$
\mu_{X \mid Y}(m \mid n):=\frac{\mu_{X, Y}(m, n)}{\mu_{Y}(n)}
$$

the probability of $X=m$ given the occurrence of $Y=n$.
(7) $X$ and $Y$ are called (statistically) independent if

$$
\mu_{X, Y}(m, n)=\mu_{X}(m) \mu_{Y}(n) .
$$

Exercise 1.4. Let $(\Omega, \mu)$ be a finite probability space and $X: \Omega \rightarrow M$ and $Y: \Omega \rightarrow N$ be two random variables. Prove:
(1) BAYES' formula:

$$
\mu_{X \mid Y}(m \mid n)=\mu_{Y \mid X}(n \mid m) \frac{\mu_{X}(m)}{\mu_{Y}(n)}
$$

if $\mu_{X}(m), \mu_{Y}(n)>0$. Or, equivalently:

$$
\mu_{X \mid Y}(m \mid n) \mu_{Y}(n)=\mu_{Y \mid X}(n \mid m) \mu_{X}(m) .
$$

[^6](2) $X$ and $Y$ are independent iff for all $m \in M$ and $n \in N$
$$
\mu_{Y}(n)=0 \text { or } \mu_{X \mid Y}(m \mid n)=\mu_{X}(m) .
$$

Exercise 1.5. Let $(\Omega, \mu)$ be a finite probability space and $X, Y: \Omega \rightarrow M:=\mathbb{C}$ be two random variables. Define $X^{\dagger} \cdot Y: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $\left(X^{+} \cdot Y\right)(x)=X(x) \stackrel{+}{ }{ }^{+} Y(x)$. Prove:
(1) $E(X)=\sum_{m \in M} m \mu_{X}(m)$.
(2) $E(X+Y)=E(X)+E(Y)$.
(3) $E(X Y)=E(X) E(Y)$ if $X$ and $Y$ are independent. The converse ${ }^{12}$ is false.

Begin
Lect. 5

## 2. Perfect Secrecy

2.a. General assumptions. Let $\mathcal{K}:=(P, C, K, \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{D})$ be a symmetric cryptosystem and $\mu_{K}$ a probability distribution on $K$ (the probability distribution of choosing an encryption key). For the rest of the section we make the following assumptions:
(1) $P, K, C$ are finite. We know that $|C| \geq|P|$ since $\mathcal{E}_{e}$ is injective.
(2) $\mu_{K}(e)>0$ for all $e \in K$.
(3) All $\mathcal{E}_{e}$ are maps. Identify $e$ with $\mathcal{E}_{e}$.
(4) $P \times K \rightarrow C,(p, e) \mapsto e(p)$ is surjective.
(5) Define $\Omega:=P \times K$ to be a set of events: $(p, e)$ is the elementary event, where the plain text $p \in P$ is encrypted using the key $e \in K$. Any probability distribution $\mu_{P}$ on $P$ defines a distribution on $\Omega$ :

$$
\mu(p, e):=\mu((p, e)):=\mu_{P}(p) \mu_{K}(e) .
$$

Conversely: $\mu_{P}, \mu_{K}$ are then the probability distributions of the random variables ${ }^{13}$ $P: \Omega \rightarrow P,(p, e) \mapsto p$ and $K: \Omega \rightarrow K,(p, e) \mapsto e$.
(6) The random variables $P$ and $K$ are independent, i.e., $\mu_{P, K}=\mu$ (in words: the choice of the encryption key is independent from the plaintext).
Recall that, by definition, the distribution of the random variable $C: \Omega \rightarrow C,(p, e) \mapsto$ $e(p)$ is given by

$$
\mu_{C}(c)=\sum_{\substack{(p, e) \in \Omega \\ e(p)=c}} \mu(p, e)
$$

ExErcise 2.1. Let $P=\{a, b\}$ with $\mu_{P}(a)=\frac{1}{4}$ and $\mu_{P}(b)=\frac{3}{4}$. Let $K:=\left\{e_{1}, e_{2}, e_{3}\right\}$ with $\mu_{K}\left(e_{1}\right)=\frac{1}{2}, \mu_{K}\left(e_{2}\right)=\mu_{K}\left(e_{3}\right)=\frac{1}{4}$. Let $C:=\{1,2,3,4\}$ and $\mathcal{E}$ be given by the following encryption matrix:

| $\mathcal{E}$ | $a$ | $b$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $e_{1}$ | 1 | 2 |
| $e_{2}$ | 2 | 3 |
| $e_{3}$ | 3 | 4 |

[^7]Compute the probability $\mu_{C}$ and the conditional probability $\mu_{P \mid C}$.

## 2.b. Perfect secrecy.

DEfinition 2.2 (Shannon 1949). $\mathcal{K}$ is called perfectly secret ${ }^{14}$ for $\mu_{P}$ (or simply perfect for $\mu_{P}$ ) if $P$ and $C$ are independent, i.e.

$$
\forall p \in P, c \in C: \mu_{P}(p)=0 \text { or } \mu_{C \mid P}(c \mid p)=\mu_{C}(c),
$$

or, equivalently,

$$
\forall p \in P, c \in C: \mu_{C}(c)=0 \text { or } \mu_{P \mid C}(p \mid c)=\mu_{P}(p)
$$

$\mathcal{K}$ is called perfectly secret if it is perfectly secret for any probability $\mu_{P}$.
Exercise 2.3. Is the cryptosystem $\mathcal{K}$ defined in Exercise 2.1 perfectly secret for the given $\mu_{P}$ ?

Remark 2.4.
(1) Perfect secrecy means that the knowledge of the ciphertext $c$ does not yield any information on the plaintext $p$.
(2) Choosing $\mu_{P}$

- to be the natural (letter) distribution in a human language tests the security property OW.
- with $\mu_{P}\left(p_{0}\right)=\mu_{P}\left(p_{1}\right)=\frac{1}{2}$ and $\mu_{P}(p)=0$ for $p \in P \backslash\left\{p_{0}, p_{1}\right\}$ tests the security property IND.


## 2.c. Transitivity.

Definition 2.5. We call $\mathcal{E}$ (or $\mathcal{K}$ ) transitive (free, regular) if for each pair $(p, c) \in$ $P \times C$ there is one (at most one, exactly one) $e \in K$ with $e(p)=c$.

Remark 2.6. Regarding each $p \in P$ as a map $p: K \rightarrow C, e \mapsto e(p)$ we have:
(1) $\mathcal{E}$ is transitive $\Longleftrightarrow \forall p \in P: p$ surjective. This implies $|K| \geq|C|$.
(2) $\mathcal{E}$ is free $\Longleftrightarrow \forall p \in P: p$ injective. This implies $|K| \leq|C|$.
(3) $\mathcal{E}$ is regular $\Longleftrightarrow \forall p \in P: p$ bijective. This implies $|K|=|C|$.

Remark 2.7.
(1) $|P|=|C|$ iff $e: P \rightarrow C$ is bijective for one (and hence for all) $e \in K$.
(2) Let $\mathcal{E}$ be free then: $|K|=|C|$ iff all $p: K \rightarrow C$ are bijective.

Proof. The first statement follows simply from the injectivity of the maps $e: P \rightarrow C$. For the second statement again use the injectivitiy argument in Remark 2.6.(2).

Lemma 2.8. The cryptosystem $\mathcal{K}$ is perfectly secret implies that $\mathcal{K}$ is transitive.

[^8]Proof. Assume that $\mathcal{E}$ is not transitive. So there exists a $p \in P$ with $p: K \rightarrow C$ is not surjective. Choose a $c \in C \backslash p(K)$. Then $\mu_{P \mid C}(p \mid c)=0$ (by definition of $\mu_{C}$ ). Since $P \times K \rightarrow C$ is surjective there exists a pair $\left(p^{\prime}, e\right) \in \Omega$ satisfying $e\left(p^{\prime}\right)=c$. Choose $\mu_{P}$ such that $\mu_{P}(p), \mu_{P}\left(p^{\prime}\right)>0$. Since $\mu_{K}(e)>0$ it follows that $\mu_{C}(c)>0$. Hence $\mu_{P}(p)>0$ and $\mu_{P \mid C}(p, c)=0<\mu_{P}(p) \mu_{C}(c)$, i.e., $\mathcal{K}$ is not perfectly secret.

Corollary 2.9. The cryptosystem $\mathcal{K}$ is perfectly secret and free implies that it is even regular and $|K|=|C|$.

Example 2.10. These are examples of regular cryptosystems:
(1) $|P|=|C|$ : Let $G$ be a finite group and set $P=C=K:=G$. Define $e(p)=e p$ ( or $e(p)=p e$ ).
(2) $|P|=2: P=\left\{p, p^{\prime}\right\}, K=\left\{e_{1}, e_{2}, e_{3}, e_{4}\right\}, C=\left\{c_{1}, c_{2}, c_{3}, c_{4}\right\}$ and

| $\mathcal{E}$ | $p$ | $p^{\prime}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $e_{1}$ | $c_{1}$ | $c_{2}$ |
| $e_{2}$ | $c_{2}$ | $c_{1}$ |
| $e_{3}$ | $c_{3}$ | $c_{4}$ |
| $e_{4}$ | $c_{4}$ | $c_{3}$ |

Example 2.11. This examples shows that $\mu_{C}$ might in general depend on $\mu_{P}$ and $\mu_{K}$ : Take $P=\left\{p_{1}, p_{2}\right\}, C=\left\{c_{1}, c_{2}\right\}, K=\left\{e_{1}, e_{2}\right\}$. Let $\mu_{P}\left(p_{1}\right)$ and $\mu_{K}\left(e_{1}\right)$ each take one of three possible values given by the right table (suffices to determine $\mu_{P}, \mu_{K}$, and $\mu_{C}$ ):

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\mu_{C}\left(c_{1}\right)$ |  |  |  | $\mu_{K}\left(e_{1}\right)$ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathcal{\varepsilon}$ | $p$ | $p^{\prime}$ |  |  |  | $\frac{1}{4}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{3}{4}$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| $e_{1}$ | $c_{1}$ | $c_{2}$ |  |  | $\frac{1}{4}$ | $\frac{10}{16}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{6}{16}$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| $e_{2}$ | $c_{2}$ | $c_{1}$ |  | $\mu_{P}\left(p_{1}\right)$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | $\frac{3}{4}$ | $\frac{6}{16}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{10}{16}$ |  |  |  |  |  |

Remark 2.12. We can make the observation in the above right table precise:
(1) If $|P|=|C|$ then: $\mu_{P}$ uniformly distributed implies $\mu_{C}$ uniformly distributed.
(2) If $\mathcal{E}$ is regular then: $\mu_{K}$ uniformly distributed implies $\mu_{C}$ uniformly distributed.

Proof. Keeping Remark 2.7 in mind:
(1) $|P|=|C|$ and $\mu_{P}$ constant implies that

$$
\mu_{C}(c)=\sum_{e \in K} \mu\left(\mathcal{E}_{e}^{-1}(c), e\right)=\sum_{e \in K} \mu_{P}\left(\mathcal{E}_{e}^{-1}(c)\right) \mu_{K}(e)=\text { const. }
$$

(2) Since by the regularity assumption $p$ is bijective for all $p \in P$ and $\mu_{K}$ is constant we conclude that

$$
\mu_{C}(c)=\sum_{p \in P} \mu\left(p, p^{-1}(c)\right)=\sum_{p \in P} \mu_{P}(p) \mu_{K}\left(p^{-1}(c)\right)=\mu_{K}\left(p^{-1}(c)\right)=\text { const. }
$$

2.d. Characterization. In the rest of the subsection assume $\mathcal{E}$ free. In particular $|K| \leq|C|$, there is no repetition in any column of the encryption matrix, and transitivity is equivalent to regularity.

Lemma 2.13. Let $\mathcal{E}$ be regular and $\mu_{P}$ arbitrary. $\mathcal{K}$ is perfectly secret for $\mu_{P}$ iff

$$
\forall e \in K, c \in C: \mu_{K, C}(e, c)=0 \text { or } \mu_{K}(e)=\mu_{C}(c)
$$

Proof. Recall: $\mathcal{K}$ perfectly secret for $\mu_{P}$ means that

$$
\forall p \in P, c \in C: \mu_{P}(p)=0 \text { or } \mu_{C \mid P}(c \mid p)=\mu_{C}(c)
$$

$" \Longrightarrow$ ": Assume $\mu_{K, C}(e, c)>0$. Then there exists a $p \in P$ with $e(p)=c$ and $\mu_{P}(p)>0$. This $p$ is unique since $e$ is injective. Moreover $e$ is uniquely determined by $p$ and $c(\mathcal{E}$ is free). Hence, the independence of $P$ and $K$ implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu_{P}(p) \mu_{K}(e)=\mu_{P, K}(p, e)=\mu_{P, C}(p, c)=\mu_{C \mid P}(c \mid p) \mu_{P}(p) \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

From $\mu_{P}(p)>0$ and the perfect secrecy of $\mathcal{K}$ we deduce that $\mu_{K}(e)=\mu_{C}(c)$.
$" \Longleftarrow "$ : Let $c \in K$ and $p \in P$ with $\mu_{P}(p)>0$. The regularity states that there exists exactly one $e \in K$ with $e(p)=c$. The general assumption $\mu_{K}(e)>0$ implies $\mu_{K, C}(e, c)>0$ and hence $\mu_{K}(e)=\mu_{C}(c)$. Formula (1) implies $\mu_{C}(c)=\mu_{C \mid P}(c \mid p)$.

Theorem 2.14. Let $\mathcal{E}$ be regular. Then $\mathcal{K}$ is perfectly secure for $\mu_{P}$ if $\mu_{K}$ is uniformly distributed.

Proof. Remark 2.12 implies that $\mu_{C}$ is uniformly distributed. From $|K|=|C|$ we deduce that $\mu_{K}(e)=\mu_{C}(c)$. Now apply Lemma 2.13.

THEOREM 2.15. Let $\mathcal{E}$ be regular (free would suffice) and $\mu_{P}$ arbitrary. If $\mathcal{K}$ is perfectly secure for $\mu_{P}$ and $\mu_{C}$ is uniformly distributed then $\mu_{K}$ is uniformly distributed.

Proof. Let $e \in K$. Choose $p \in P$ with $\mu(p)>0$ and set $c:=e(p)$. Then $\mu_{K, C}(e, c)>$ 0 . Hence $\mu_{K}(e)=\mu_{C}(c)$ by Lemma 2.13. (Freeness would suffice to prove " $\Longrightarrow$ " in Lemma 2.13.)

Theorem 2.16 (Shannon, 1949). Let $\mathcal{K}$ be regular and ${ }^{15}|P|=|C|$. The following statements are then equivalent:
(1) $\mathcal{K}$ is perfectly secure for $\bar{\mu}_{P}$.
(2) $\mathcal{K}$ is perfectly secure.
(3) $\mu_{K}$ is uniformly distributed.

Proof.
$(3) \Longrightarrow$ (2): Theorem 2.14.
$(2) \Longrightarrow$ (1): Trivial.
$(1) \Longrightarrow(3):$ Let $\mu_{P}=\bar{\mu}_{P} \stackrel{2.12}{\Longrightarrow} \mu_{C}$ uniformly distributed $\stackrel{2.15}{\Longrightarrow} \mu_{K}$ uniformly distributed.

[^9]Example 2.17. The Vernam one-time pad (OTP) introduced in 1917 is perfectly secure:

- $P=C=K=G=\left((\mathbb{Z} / 2 \mathbb{Z})^{n},+\right)$, i.e., bit-strings of length $n$.
- $e: p \mapsto p+e$, i.e., bitwise addition (a.k.a. XOR-addition).

Exercise 2.18. Construct an example showing that the converse of Theorem 2.14 is false and that the condition $|P|=|C|$ in Shannon's Theorem 2.16 cannot be simply ${ }^{16}$ omitted.

## 3. Entropy

Let $X: \Omega \rightarrow X$ be a finite random variable ${ }^{17}$, i.e., with $X$ finite, say of cardinality $n$.

## 3.a. Entropy.

Definition 3.1. The entropy of $X$ is defined as

$$
H(X):=-\sum_{x \in X} \mu_{X}(x) \lg \mu_{X}(x)
$$

where $\lg :=\log _{2}$.
As we will see below, the entropy is an attempt to quantify (measure) the diversity of $X$, the ambiguity of $X$, our uncertainty or lack of knowledge about the outcome of the "experiment" $X$.

Remark 3.2.
(1) Since $\lim _{a \rightarrow 0} a \lg a=0$ we set $0 \lg 0:=0$. Alternatively one can sum over all $x \in X$ with $\mu_{X}(x)>0$.
(2) $H(X)=\sum_{x \in X} \mu_{X}(x) \lg \frac{1}{\mu_{X}(x)}$.
(3) $H(X) \geq 0$. $H(X)=0$ iff $\mu_{X}(x)=1$ for an $x \in X$.

Proof. (3) $-a \lg a \geq 0$ for $a \in[0,1]$ and $-a \lg a=0$ iff $a=0$ or $a=1$. (The unique maximum in the interval $[0,1]$ has the coordinates $\left(\frac{1}{e}, \frac{1}{e \ln (2)}\right) \approx(0.37,0.53)$.)

Example 3.3.
(1) Throwing a coin with $\mu_{X}(0)=\frac{3}{4}$ and $\mu_{X}(1)=\frac{1}{4}$ :

$$
H(X)=\frac{3}{4} \lg \frac{4}{3}+\frac{1}{4} \lg 4=\frac{3}{4}(2-\lg 3)+\frac{1}{4} 2=2-\frac{3}{4} \lg 3 \approx 0.81 .
$$

Let $n:=|X|<\infty$ by the above general assumption.

[^10](2) If $X$ (i.e., $\mu_{X}$ ) is uniformly distributed then
$$
H(X)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{n} \lg n=\lg n
$$

We will see later in Theorem 3.14 that $H(X) \leq \lg n$ and $H(X)=\lg n$ if and only if $\mu_{X}$ is uniformly distributed.

Example 3.4. Let $X=\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}\right\}$ with $\mu_{X}\left(x_{1}\right)=\frac{1}{2}, \mu_{X}\left(x_{2}\right)=\mu_{X}\left(x_{3}\right)=\frac{1}{4}$. "Encode" ${ }^{18} x_{1}$ as $0, x_{2}$ as 10 , and $x_{3}$ as 11 . The average bit-length of the encoding is

$$
\mu_{X}\left(x_{1}\right) \cdot 1+\mu_{X}\left(x_{2}\right) \cdot 2+\mu_{X}\left(x_{3}\right) \cdot 2=\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2}=\frac{3}{2}
$$

which in this case coincides with the entropy $H(X)$.

## 3.b. Encodings.

Definition 3.5. A map $f: X \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\bullet}$ is called a encoding ${ }^{19}$ of $X$ if the extension to $X^{\bullet}$ defined by

$$
f: X^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\bullet}, x_{1} \cdots x_{n} \mapsto f\left(x_{1}\right) \cdots f\left(x_{n}\right)
$$

is an injective map.
Example 3.6. Suppose $X=\{a, b, c, d\}$, and consider the following three different encoding candidates:

$$
\begin{array}{lllllll}
f(a) & =1 & f(b)=10 & f(c) & =100 & f(d) & =1000 \\
\hline g(a)=0 & g(b)=10 & g(c)=110 & g(d) & =111 \\
\hline h(a)=0 & h(b)=01 & h(c) & =10 & h(d) & =11
\end{array}
$$

$f$ and $g$ are encodings but $h$ is not.

- An encoding using $f$ can be decoded by starting at the end and moving backwards: every time 1 appears signals the end of the current element.
- An encoding using $g$ can be decoded by starting at the beginning and moving forward in a simple sequential way by cutting off recognized bit-substrings. For example, the decoding of 10101110 is $b b d a$.
- $h(a c)=010=h(b a)$.

For an encoding using $f$ we could have started from the beginning. But to decide the end of an encoded substring we need to look one step forward. And decoding from the end forces us to use memory.

Maps like $g$ that have the property of allowing a simple sequential encoding are called prefix-free: An encoding $g$ is prefix-free if there do not exist two elements $x, y \in X$ and a string $z \in\{0,1\}^{\bullet}$ such that $g(x)=g(y) z$.

[^11]Let $\ell:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}$ denote the length function (cf. Definition 3.1.(1)). Then $\ell \circ f \circ X$ is the random variable with expected value

$$
\ell(f):=\sum_{x \in X} \mu_{X}(x) \ell(f(x)),
$$

expressing the average length of the encoding $f$.
The idea is that the entropy of $X$ should be $\ell(f)$, where $f$ is the "most efficient" encoding of $X$. We would expect $f$ to be most efficient if an event with probability $0<a<1$ should be encoded by a bit-string of "length" $-\lg a=\lg \frac{1}{a}$. In Example 3.4 we encoded an event with probability $\frac{1}{2^{n}}$ by a bit-string of length $n=-\lg \frac{1}{2^{n}}$.

Theorem 3.7. There exists an encoding $f$ with $H(X) \leq \ell(f) \leq H(X)+1$.
Proof. Huffman's algorithm produces such an $f$. We illustrate it on the next example.

Example 3.8 (Huffman's algorithm). Suppose $X:=\{a, b, c, d, e\}$ has the following probability distribution: $\mu_{X}(a)=0.05, \mu_{X}(b)=0.10, \mu_{X}(c)=0.12, \mu_{X}(d)=0.13$, and $\mu_{X}(e)=0.60$. View the points of $X$ as the initial vertices of some graph. Take two vertices $x, y$ with lowest probability $\mu_{X}(x), \mu_{X}(y)$ and connect them to a new vertex and label the two directed edges by 0,1 respectively. Assign to the new vertex the probability $\mu_{X}(x)+\mu_{X}(y)$. Repeat the process forgetting $x$ and $y$ until creating the edge assigned the probability 1 .

This gives the following prefix-free encoding table:

| $x$ | $f(x)$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| $a$ | 000 |
| $b$ | 001 |
| $c$ | 010 |
| $d$ | 011 |
| $e$ | 1 |

The average length of the encoding is

$$
\ell(f)=0.05 \cdot 3+0.10 \cdot 3+0.12 \cdot 3+0.13 \cdot 3+0.60 \cdot 1=1.8
$$

approximating the value of the entropy $H(X) \approx 1.74$ as described by the previous theorem.

## 3.c. Entropy of a natural language.

Example 3.9. Let $X$ be a random variable with values in $X=A=\{a, \ldots, z\}$.
(1) If $\mu_{X}$ is uniformly distributed then $H(X)=\lg 26 \approx 4.70$ (i.e., more than 4 bits and less than 5 bits).
(2) If $\mu_{X}$ is the distribution of the letters in the English language then $H(X) \approx 4.19$.

Definition 3.10. Let $A$ be an alphabet.
(1) If $X$ is a random variable with $X \subset A^{\ell}$ then we call

$$
R(X):=\lg n-H(X)
$$

the redundancy of $X$. Since $0 \leq H(X) \leq \lg n$ we deduce that $0 \leq R(X) \leq \lg n$. By definition $H(X)+R(X)=\lg n$.
(2) Let $L_{\ell} \subset A^{\ell}$ be the random variable of $\ell$-grams in a (natural) language $L \subset A^{\bullet}$. The entropy of $L$ (per letter) is defined as

$$
H_{L}:=\lim _{\ell \rightarrow \infty} \frac{H\left(L_{\ell}\right)}{\ell}
$$

The redundancy of $L$ (per letter) is defined as

$$
R_{L}:=\lg |A|-H_{L}=\lim _{\ell \rightarrow \infty} \frac{R\left(L_{\ell}\right)}{\ell}
$$

Example 3.11. For $L=$ English we estimate $H\left(L_{1}\right) \approx 4.19, H\left(L_{2}\right) \approx 3.90$. Empirical data shows that

$$
1.0 \leq H_{L}:=H_{\text {English }} \leq 1.5
$$

For $H_{L}=1.25 \approx 27 \% \cdot \lg |A|$ the redundancy $R_{L}=R_{\text {English }}=4.70-1.25=3.45 \approx$ $73 \% \cdot \lg |A|$.
To understand what this means let us consider the following model for $L$ : Assume $L \cap A^{\ell}$ contains exactly $t_{\ell}$ equally probable texts (or text beginnings), while all other texts have probability zero. Then from $H_{L}=\lim _{\ell \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\lg t_{\ell}}{\ell}=1.25$ we conclude that $t_{\ell} \approx 2^{1.25 \cdot \ell}$ for $\ell \gg 0$. For example, $t_{10} \approx 5793$ compared to the $\left|A^{10}\right|=26^{10} \approx 1.41 \cdot 10^{14}$ possible 10-letter strings.

Remark 3.12. A single text has no entropy. Entropy is only defined for a language.

## 3.d. Further properties.

Definition 3.13. Let $X: \Omega \rightarrow X$ and $Y: \Omega \rightarrow Y$ be two finite random variables. Define
(1) the joint entropy ${ }^{20}$

$$
H(X, Y):=-\sum_{x, y} \mu_{X, Y}(x, y) \lg \mu_{X, Y}(x, y)
$$

(2) the conditional entropy or equivocation ${ }^{21}$

$$
H(X \mid y):=-\sum_{x} \mu_{X \mid Y}(x \mid y) \lg \mu_{X \mid Y}(x \mid y)
$$

and

$$
H(X \mid Y):=\sum_{y} \mu_{Y}(y) H(X \mid y)
$$

[^12]
## (3) the transinformation ${ }^{22}$

$$
I(X, Y):=H(X)-H(X \mid Y)
$$

## Theorem 3.14.

(1) $H(X) \leq \lg n$. Equality holds iff $\mu_{X}$ is uniformly distributed.
(2) $H(X, Y) \leq H(X)+H(Y)$. Equality holds iff $X, Y$ are independent.
(3) $H(X \mid Y) \leq H(X)$ and equivalently $I(X, Y) \geq 0$. Equality holds iff $X, Y$ are independent.
(4) $H(X \mid Y)=H(X, Y)-H(Y)$.
(5) $H(X \mid Y)=H(Y \mid X)+H(X)-H(Y)$.
(6) $I(X, Y)=I(Y, X)$.

Proof. (1) and (2) are exercise. For (2) use Jensen's inequality (cf. Lemma A.1.1). (4) is a simple exercise. (3) follows from (2) and (4). (5) follows from (4) (since $H(X, Y)=$ $H(Y, X)$, by definition) and (6) from (5).

Example 3.15. Let $X$ be a random variable and $X^{n}$ the random variable describing the $n$-fold independent repetition ${ }^{23}$ of the "experiment" $X$. Then

$$
H\left(X^{n}\right)=n H(X)
$$

- If $X$ describes throwing a perfect coin (i.e., $\mu_{X}$ is uniformly distributed) then $H\left(X^{n}\right)=H(\underbrace{X, \ldots, X}_{n})=n$.
- If $X$ describes throwing the coin of Example 3.3(1) then $H\left(X^{n}\right) \approx 0.81 \cdot n$.


## 4. Entropy in cryptosystems

For the rest of the chapter (course) let $\mathcal{K}=(P, C, K, \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{D})$ be a symmetric cryptosystem satisfying
(1) $P, K, C$ are finite. In particular $|C| \geq|P|$ as $\mathcal{E}_{e}$ is injective by Exercise 1.4.2.
(2) $\mathcal{E}_{e}$ is a map.
(3) $P$ and $K$ are independent.

Lemma 4.1. The above assumptions on $\mathcal{K}$ imply:
(1) $H(P, K)=H(K, C)=H(P, K, C)$
(2) $H(C) \geq H(C \mid K)=H(P \mid K)=H(P)$.
(3) $H(K \mid C)=H(P)+H(K)-H(C)$.
(4) $I(K, C)=H(C)-H(P) \geq 0$.

Proof. $\mathcal{E}$ is injective and $P, K$ are independent.
Definition 4.2. One calls
${ }^{22}$ German: Transinformation $=$ gegenseitige Information
${ }^{23}$ If you are still in doubt of what this means then interpret $X$ as the event space and define $X^{n}$ as the product space with the product distribution.

- $H(K \mid C)$ the key equivocation ${ }^{24}$.
- $I(K, C)$ the key transinformation.


## Remark 4.3.

- The statement $H(P) \leq H(C)$ is a generalization of Remark 2.12: If $|P|=|C|$ then $\mu_{P}$ uniformly distributed implies $\mu_{C}$ uniformly distributed.
- $H(P)<H(C)$ is possible, e.g., when $\mathcal{K}$ is perfectly secret, $|P|=|C|$, and $P$ not uniformly distributed.
EXERCISE 4.4. Construct under the above assumption a cryptosystem with $H(K)<$ $H(C)$.

Definition 4.5. Denote by

$$
R(P):=\lg |P|-H(P)
$$

the redundancy of $P$.
Theorem 4.6. Let $|P|=|C|$. Then

$$
H(K) \geq H(K \mid C) \geq H(K)-R(P)
$$

and

$$
R(P) \geq I(K, C) \geq 0
$$

Proof. Let $|P|=|C|=n$. From $H(C) \leq \lg n$ we deduce that

$$
H(K \mid C) \geq H(K)+H(P)-\lg n=H(K)-R(P)
$$

and

$$
I(K, C) \leq \lg n-H(P)=R(P)
$$

Example 4.7. Reconsider Example 2.11 where $P=\left\{p_{1}, p_{2}\right\}, C=\left\{c_{1}, c_{2}\right\}, K=$ $\left\{e_{1}, e_{2}\right\}$, and

$$
\begin{array}{c|cc}
\mathcal{E} & p & p^{\prime} \\
\hline e_{1} & c_{1} & c_{2} \\
e_{2} & c_{2} & c_{1}
\end{array}
$$

Choose the distributions $\mu_{P}=\left(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{3}{4}\right), \mu_{K}=\left(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{3}{4}\right)$. Then $\mu_{C}=\left(\frac{10}{16}, \frac{6}{16}\right), H(P)=H(K) \approx$ 0.81 , and $H(C) \approx 0.95$. Further $R(P)=1-H(P) \approx 0.19$ and $H(K)-R(P) \approx 0.62$. Hence

$$
0.62 \leq H(K \mid C) \leq 0.81
$$

and

$$
0 \leq I(K, C) \leq 0.19
$$

[^13]Indeed,

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(K \mid C) & =H(P)+H(K)-H(C) \approx 0.67 \text { and } \\
I(K, C) & =H(C)-H(P) \approx 0.14
\end{aligned}
$$

Remark 4.8. Interpreting Theorem 4.6:

- The redundancy of $P$ is a (good) upper bound for the key transinformation.
- To get a nonnegative lower bound for the key equivocation $H(K \mid C) \geq H(K)-$ $R(P)$ we need at least as much key entropy as redundancy in $P$.
- If $P$ is uniformly distributed (e.g., random data) then $R(P)=0$. It follows that $H(K \mid C)=H(K)$, i.e., $I(K, C)=0$.

Example 4.9. Let $P=C=A^{n}$ and $P=L_{n}$ for a language $L$ with entropy $H_{L}$ and redundancy $R_{L}$ per letter. For $n$ big enough we have

$$
H(K \mid C) \geq H(K)-R(P) \approx H(K)-n R_{L}
$$

Interpretation: If the key entropy $H(K)$ is fixed and $n$ is allowed to grow (e.g., repeated encryption with the same key) then as $n$ increases the entropy of the key is exhausted ${ }^{25}$.

Definition 4.10. The number

$$
n_{0}:=\left\lceil\frac{H(K)}{R_{L}}\right\rceil
$$

is called the unicity distance ${ }^{26}$.
Remark 4.11. The higher the redundancy of the language the quicker a key is exhausted.

Example 4.12. For $|A|=26$ and $R_{L}=3.45$ (as for the English language) one obtains:

| type of the symmetric cryptosystem | $\|K\|$ | $H(K)$ | $n_{0}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| monoalphabetic substitution | $26!\approx 2^{88.4}$ | $\approx 88.4$ | 26 |
| permutation of 16 -blocks | $16!\approx 2^{44.3}$ | $\approx 44.3$ | 13 |
| DES | $2^{56}$ | 56 | 17 |
| AES | $2^{128}$ | 128 | 38 |

If we consider $n=20$ for the monoalphabetic substitution then the key equivocation

$$
H(K \mid C) \geq H(K)-R(P) \approx 88.4-20 \cdot 3.45=19.4
$$

and $2^{19.4} \approx 691802$.

Begin
Lect. 8

REmark 4.13. There are several ways to increase the unicity distance despite short key lengths / small key entropies:

- Reduce the redundancy of $P$ by compressing (zipping) the text.

[^14]Note that with $R_{L} \rightarrow 0$ imply $n_{0} \rightarrow \infty$. We now estimate the maximum compression factor $b$ where a text of length $n \mapsto$ a text of length $\frac{n}{b}, b \geq 1$. The "compressed" language $L^{\prime}$ has the entropy per letter:

$$
H_{L^{\prime}}:=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{H\left(L_{n}\right)}{n / b}=b \cdot H_{L} \leq \lg |A|
$$

Hence $b \leq \frac{\lg |A|}{H_{L}}$. For $L$ the English language this means that $b \leq \frac{4.70}{1.25} \approx 3.76$.
The following can be much more cheaper than compression:

- Find ways to "cover ${ }^{27}$ " the redundancy of $P$ against attackers with limited computing resources: Combination of substitution and Feistel ciphers (see [Wik11c] and [MvOV97, §7.4.1] and Chapter 4).
- Find ways to "bloat ${ }^{28 "}$ the key entropy against attackers with limited computing resources: Autokey cipher (Figure 4) and pseudo random sequences (see next chapter).

| Plaintext: | das | alphabet | wechselt | staendig |
| ---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Key: | key | dasalpha | betwechs | eltstaen |
| Ciphertext: | neq | dlhhlqla | xivdwgsl | wetwgdmt |

Figure 1. Autokey variant of Vigenère's cipher

## 4.a. Free systems.

Definition 4.14. Analogously one calls

- $H(P \mid C)$ the plaintext equivocation ${ }^{29}$.
- $I(P, C)$ the plaintext transinformation.

Lemma 4.15. Setting $H_{0}(K):=H(K \mid P C)$. Then
(1) $H(P, K)=H(P, C)+H_{0}(K)$.
(2) $H(K)=H(C \mid P)+H_{0}(K)$.
(3) $H(K \mid C)=H(P \mid C)+H_{0}(K)$.

Further:

$$
\mathcal{K} \text { is free } \Longleftrightarrow H_{0}(K)=0 \Longleftrightarrow I(K, P C)=H(K)
$$

In particular: The key equivocation and the plaintext equivocation coincide in free cryptosystems.

Remark 4.16. We interpret
(1) $H_{0}(K)$ as the unused key entropy.
(2) $I(K, P C)$ as the used key entropy.

[^15]Proof of Lemma 4.15. Verify (1) as an exercise by a straightforward calculation using the definitions. (2) follows from subtracting $H(P)$ from (1) and use $H(K \mid P)=$ $H(K)$, which is a consequence of the independence of $P$ and $K$. To obtain (3) subtract $H(C)$ from (1) and use $H(P, K)=H(K, C)$ (Lemma 4.1.(1)). The equivalence is an exercise.

Theorem 4.17. Let $\mathcal{K}$ be a free cryptosystem. Then:
(1) $H(P \mid C)=H(K \mid C)=H(P)+H(K)-H(C)$.
(2) $I(P, C)=H(C)-H(K)$.
(3) $H(K) \leq H(C)$.

Proof.
(1) follows from Lemma 4.15 and Lemma 4.1.(3). For the rest we verify that

$$
0 \leq I(P, C):=H(P)-H(P \mid C) \stackrel{4.15 .(3)}{=} H(P)-H(K \mid C) \stackrel{(1)}{=} H(C)-H(K)
$$

Remark 4.18. The statement $H(K) \leq H(C)$ is a generalization of Remark 2.12.(2), but without the regularity assumption:
If $\mathcal{K}$ is regular then: $\mu_{K}$ uniformly distributed implies $\mu_{C}$ uniformly distributed.
Corollary 4.19. Let $\mathcal{K}$ be a free system.
(1) If $|P|=|C|$ then $H(P \mid C) \geq H(K)-R(P)$.
(2) If $|K|=|C|$ then $I(P, C) \leq R(K)$.

Proof. (1) follows from $H(P \mid C)=H(K \mid C)$ and Theorem 4.6. For (2) let $|K|=$ $|C|=: n$. Then

$$
I(P, C)=H(C)-H(K) \leq \lg n-H(K)=R(K)
$$

Example 4.20. For $P, C, K$ of Exercise 2.1 we compute:

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(P) & \left.=\frac{1}{4} \lg 4+\frac{3}{4} \lg \frac{4}{3}=\frac{1}{4} \cdot 2+\frac{3}{4} \cdot(2-\lg 3)=2-\frac{3}{4} \lg 3 \approx 0.81 \text { (maximum is } 1\right) . \\
H(K) & =1.5 \text { (maximum is } \lg 3 \approx 1.58) \\
H(C) & \approx 1.85 \text { (maximum is } 2) .
\end{aligned}
$$

And since $\mathcal{K}$ is free:

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(P \mid C) & =H(P)+H(K)-H(C) \approx 0.46 \approx 57 \% \cdot H(P) \\
I(P, C) & =H(C)-H(K) \approx 0.35 \approx 43 \% \cdot H(P) \\
R(P) & \approx 1-0.81 \approx 0.19, \text { and } \\
n_{0} & =\left\lceil\frac{H(K)}{R(P)}\right\rceil=\left\lceil\frac{1.5}{0.19}\right\rceil=8 .
\end{aligned}
$$

If $\mu_{P}$ would have been uniformly distributed then we recompute:

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(P) & =1 \\
H(C) & \approx 1.91 \\
H(P \mid C) & \approx 0.59 \\
I(P, C) & \approx 0.41
\end{aligned}
$$

4.b. Perfect systems. The powerful notion of entropy offers us another characterization of perfect systems but without unnecessarily assuming that $|P|=|C|$ as in Theorem 2.16.

Theorem 4.21. The following statements are equivalent (under the general assumptions made at the beginning §4):
(1) $\mathcal{K}$ is perfect for $\mu_{P}$, i.e., $P$ and $C$ are independent.
(2) $I(P, C)=0$.
(3) $H(P, C)=H(P)+H(C)$.
(4) $H(C \mid P)=H(C)$.
(5) $H(P \mid C)=H(P)$.

In the case of freeness (and hence of regularity by Lemma 2.8) of the cryptosystem the list of equivalences additionally includes:
(6) $H(K)=H(C)$.
(7) $H(K \mid C)=H(P)$.

The last point implies that $H(K) \geq H(P)$.
Proof. The equivalence of (1)-(5) is trivial. (6) is (4) and the equality $H(K)=H(C \mid$ $P)($ Lemma 4.15.(2)). (7) is (5) and the equality $H(K \mid C)=H(P \mid C)$ (Lemma 4.15.(3)).

Remark 4.22. Compare the statement $H(K)=H(C)$ with that of Lemma 2.13:
... $\mu(e)=\mu(c)$ for all $e \in K, c \in C$.
Corollary 4.23 (Shannon). Let $\mathcal{K}$ be a free cryptosystem. Then $\mathcal{K}$ is perfectly secret for $\mu_{P}$ and $\mu_{C}$ is uniformly distributed if and only if $|K|=|C|$ and $\mu_{K}$ is uniformly distributed (compare with Theorems 2.15 and 2.14).

Proof. $\Longrightarrow$ : Set $n:=|C|$. Since $\mu_{C}$ is uniformly distributed we know that $H(C)=$ $\lg n$. Freeness of $\mathcal{K}$ implies that $|K| \leq|C|=n$. With the perfect secrecy of $\mathcal{K}$ for $\mu_{P}$ and the freeness of $\mathcal{K}$ we conclude that $H(K)=H(C)=\lg n$ by Theorem 4.21.(6). Hence $\mu_{K}$ is uniformly distributed and $|K|=|C|$ by Theorem 3.14.(1) (giving another proof of Corollary 2.9).
$\Longleftarrow$ : Define $n:=|K|=|C|$. $\mu_{K}$ uniformly distributed implies that $\lg n=H(K) \leq$ $H(C) \leq \lg n$ by Theorem 4.17.(3). Hence $H(K)=H(C)=\lg n$ and $\mathcal{K}$ is perfectly secure for $\mu_{P}$ by Theorem 4.21.(6).

## CHAPTER 3

## Pseudo-Random Sequences

## 1. Introduction

We want to distinguish random sequences from pseudo-random sequences, where we replace numbers by bits in the obvious way.

First we list what we expect from the word "random":

- Independence.
- Uniform distribution.
- Unpredictability.

Here is a small list of possible sources of random sequences of bits coming from a physical source:

- Throwing a perfect coin.
- Some quantum mechanical systems producing statistical randomness.
- Frequency irregularities of oscillators.
- Tiny vibrations on the surface of a hard disk.
- ... (see /dev/random on a Linux system).

A pseudo-random generator is, roughly speaking, an algorithm that takes a usually short random seed and produces in a deterministic way a long pseudo-random sequence.

Now we list some advantages of a pseudo-random generator:

- Simpler than real randomness (produceable using software instead of hardware).
- Reconstructable if the seed is known (e.g., an exchange of a long key can be reduced to the exchange of a short random seed).

The disadvantages include:

- The seed must be random.
- Unpredictability is violated if the seed is known.

Possible applications:

- Test algorithms by simulating random input. An unpredictability would even be undesirable in this case as one would like to be able to reconstruct the input (for the sake of reconstructing a computation or an output).
- Cryptography: Generation of session keys, stream ciphers (the seed is part of the secret key), automatic generations of TANs and PINs, etc.


## 2. Linear recurrence equations and pseudo-random bit generators

Let $K$ be a field, $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$, and $c=\left(\begin{array}{c}c_{0} \\ \vdots \\ c_{\ell-1}\end{array}\right) \in K^{\ell \times 1}$ with $c_{0} \neq 0$.
Definition 2.1. The linear recurrence (or recursion) equation (LRE) of degree $\ell \geq 1$

$$
s_{n+\ell}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
s_{n} & \cdots & s_{n+\ell-1}
\end{array}\right) \cdot\left(\begin{array}{c}
c_{0}  \tag{2}\\
\vdots \\
c_{l-1}
\end{array}\right) \quad(n \geq 0)
$$

defines ${ }^{1}$ for the initial value $t=\left(\begin{array}{lll}t_{0} & \cdots & t_{\ell-1}\end{array}\right) \in K^{1 \times \ell}$ a sequence $s=\left(s_{n}\right)$ in $K$ with $s_{i}=t_{i}$ for $i=0, \ldots, \ell-1$. We call $t^{(n)}:=\left(\begin{array}{lll}s_{n} & \cdots & s_{n+\ell-1}\end{array}\right)$ the $n$-th state vector $\left(t^{(0)}=t\right)$. We write $s=\langle c, t\rangle$.

ExAmple 2.2. Taking $K=\mathbb{F}_{2}, \ell=4, c=\left(\begin{array}{l}1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0\end{array}\right)$ and $t=\left(\begin{array}{llll}1 & 0 & 1 & 0\end{array}\right)$ we get:

$$
s=\underline{1,0,1,0}, 1,1,1,1,0,0,0,1,0,0,1, \mid \underline{1,0,1,0}, \ldots
$$

REMARK 2.3. A linear recurrence equation over $K=\mathbb{F}_{2}$ (abbreviated by $\mathbb{F}_{2}$-LRE) of degree $\ell$ is nothing but an $\ell$-bit Linear Feedback Shift Register (LFSR) [Wik10f]. It is an example of a linear pseudo-random bit generator (PRBG) (cf. Example 5.2). It is one among many pseudo-random bit generators [Wik10g].

## Definition 2.4.

(1) Define $\chi:=\chi_{c}:=x^{\ell}-c_{\ell-1} x^{\ell-1}-\cdots-c_{1} x-c_{0} \in K[x]$.
(2) $s$ is called $k$-periodic $(k \in \mathbb{N})$ if $s_{i+k}=s_{i}$ for all $i \geq 0$, or equivalently, $t^{(i+k)}=t^{(i)}$ for all $i \geq 0$.
(3) $c$ is called $k$-periodic $(k \in \mathbb{N})$ if $s=\langle c, t\rangle$ is $k$-periodic for all $t \in K^{1 \times \ell}$.
(4) If $s$ (resp. $c$ ) is $k$-periodic for some $k \in \mathbb{N}$ then denote by $\operatorname{per}(s)$ (resp. $\operatorname{per}(c))$ the smallest such number and call it the period length. If such a $k$ does not exist then set per $s:=\infty$ (resp. per $c:=\infty$ ).

Remark 2.5.
(1) $s_{n+\ell}=t^{(n)} \cdot c$.

[^16](2) $t^{(n)}=t^{(n-1)} \cdot C=t \cdot C^{n}$ with
\[

C:=\left($$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 & c_{0} \\
1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & c_{1} \\
0 & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\
\vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 & c_{\ell-2} \\
0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 & c_{\ell-1}
\end{array}
$$\right)
\]

(3) $\langle c, t\rangle$ is $k$-periodic if and only if $t \cdot C^{k}=t$.
(4) $c$ is $k$-periodic if and only if $C^{k}=I_{\ell}$.
(5) $\operatorname{per}\langle c, t\rangle=\min \left\{k>0 \mid t \cdot C^{k}=t\right\}$.
(6) $\operatorname{per} c=\min \left\{k>0 \mid C^{k}=I_{\ell}\right\}$.
(7) $\langle c, t\rangle$ is $k$-periodic iff $\operatorname{per}\langle c, t\rangle \mid k$.
(8) $\operatorname{per} c=\operatorname{lcm}\left\{\operatorname{per}\langle c, t\rangle \mid t \in K^{1 \times \ell}\right\}$.
(9) $\operatorname{per}\langle c, 0\rangle=1$.
(10) There exists a (row) vector $t \in K^{1 \times \ell}$ with $\operatorname{per}\langle c, t\rangle=\operatorname{per} c$.
(11) $C$ is the companion matrix ${ }^{2}$ of $\chi$. Hence, $\chi$ is the minimal polynomial and therefore also the characteristic polynomial of $C$ (as its degree is $\ell$ ).
(12) $C$ is a regular matrix since $c_{0} \neq 0$, i.e., $C \in \mathrm{GL}_{\ell}(K)$.
(13) $\operatorname{per} c=\operatorname{ord} C$ in $\mathrm{GL}_{\ell}(K)$.
(14) $\mathrm{GL}_{\ell}$ and its cyclic subgroup $\langle C\rangle$ generated by the matrix $C$ both act on the vector space $K^{1 \times \ell}$. The orbit ${ }^{3} t \cdot\langle C\rangle=\left\{t^{(i)} \mid i \geq 0\right\}$ of $t$ is nothing but the set of all reachable state vectors.
(15) $\operatorname{per}\langle c, t\rangle=|t \cdot\langle C\rangle|$.

Proof. (1)-(14) are trivial except maybe (10) which is an exercise. To see (15) note that the state vectors $t^{(i)}$ with $0 \leq i<\operatorname{per}\langle c, t\rangle$ are pairwise distinct: $t^{(i)}=t^{(j)}$ for $0 \leq i \leq j<\operatorname{per}\langle c, t\rangle$ means that $t C^{i}=t C^{j}$ and hence $t C^{j-i}=t$ with $j-i<\operatorname{per}\langle c, t\rangle$. Finally this implies that $j=i$.
2.a. Linear algebra. Let $K$ be a field, $V$ a nontrivial finite dimensional $K$ vector space, $\varphi \in \operatorname{End}_{K}(V)$, and $0 \neq v \in V$.

Recall, the minimal polynomial $m_{\varphi}$ is the unique monic ${ }^{4}$ generator of the principal ideal $I_{\varphi}:=\left\{f \in K[x] \mid f(\varphi)=0 \in \operatorname{End}_{K}(V)\right\}$, the so-called vanishing ideal of $\varphi$.

Analogously, the minimal polynomial $m_{\varphi, v}$ with respect to $v$ is the unique monic generator of the principal ideal $I_{\varphi, v}:=\{f \in K[x] \mid f(\varphi) v=0 \in V\}$, the so-called vanishing ideal of $\varphi$ with respect to $v$.

Exercise 2.6. For $0 \neq v \in V$ let $U_{\varphi, v}:=\left\langle\varphi^{i}(v) \mid i \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right\rangle \leq V$. Then
(1) $m_{\varphi, v}=m_{\varphi_{\mid U_{\varphi}, v}}$.
(2) $\operatorname{dim}_{K} U_{\varphi, v}=\min \left\{d \in \mathbb{N} \mid\left(v, \varphi(v), \ldots, \varphi^{d}(v)\right)\right.$ are $K$-linearly dependent $\} \geq 1$.

[^17](3) $\operatorname{deg} m_{\varphi, v}=\operatorname{dim}_{K} U_{\varphi, v}$.
(4) $m_{\varphi}=\operatorname{lcm}\left\{m_{\varphi, v} \mid 0 \neq v \in V\right\}$. This gives an algorithm to compute the minimal polynomial of $\varphi$ as the lcm of at most $n$ minimal polynomials $m_{\varphi, v_{1}}, \ldots, m_{\varphi, v_{\ell}}$, where $\ell=\operatorname{dim}_{K} V$.
(5) $\alpha \in \operatorname{End}_{K}(V)$ is an automorphism if and only if $m_{\alpha}(0) \neq 0 \in K$. This gives an algorithm to compute the inverse of $\alpha$.
Definition 2.7. Let $0 \neq f \in K[x]$. If $f(0) \neq 0$ define
$$
\operatorname{ord} f:=\min \left\{k>0: f \mid x^{k}-1\right\} \text { or } \infty
$$

If $f(0)=0$, then write $f=x^{r} \bar{f}$ with $\bar{f}(0) \neq 0$ and define

$$
\operatorname{ord} f:=\operatorname{ord} \bar{f}
$$

Definition 2.8. Let $\alpha \in \operatorname{Aut}_{K}(V)$ and $\langle\alpha\rangle$ the cyclic subgroup of $\operatorname{Aut}_{K}(V)$ generated by $\alpha$. By

$$
\operatorname{ord} \alpha:=|\langle\alpha\rangle|
$$

denote the order of the group element $\alpha$. For $v \in V$ denote the orbit of $v$ under the action of the cyclic subgroup $\langle\alpha\rangle$ as usual by

$$
\langle\alpha\rangle v:=\left\{\alpha^{i}(v) \mid i \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right\} .
$$

## Proposition 2.9.

(1) ord $m_{\alpha}=\operatorname{ord} \alpha$.
(2) ord $m_{\alpha, v}=|\langle\alpha\rangle v|$ for $v \neq 0$.
(3) If $m_{\alpha}$ is irreducible then $|\langle\alpha\rangle v|=$ ord $m_{\alpha}$ for all $v \neq 0$.
(4) If $K$ is finite and $m_{\alpha}$ irreducible then ord $m_{\alpha}| | V \mid-1$.
(5) If there exists a vector $v \in V$ with $\langle\alpha\rangle v=V \backslash\{0\}$ then $m_{\alpha}$ is irreducible.

Proof. (1) follows from the equivalence

$$
\alpha^{k}=\operatorname{id}_{V} \Longleftrightarrow\left(x^{k}-1\right)(\alpha)=0 \Longleftrightarrow m_{\alpha} \mid x^{k}-1
$$

(2) If $|\langle\alpha\rangle v|<\infty$ then there exists $0 \leq i<j$ with $\alpha^{i}(v)=\alpha^{j}(v)$. Hence, $\alpha^{j-i}(v)=v$. Therefore (even if $|\langle\alpha\rangle v|=\infty$ )

$$
\begin{aligned}
|\langle\alpha\rangle v| & =\min \left\{k>0 \mid \alpha^{k}(v)=v\right\} \\
& =\min \left\{k>0 \mid\left(\alpha^{k}-\operatorname{id}_{V}\right)(v)=0 \in V\right\} \\
& =\min \left\{k>0: m_{\alpha, v} \mid x^{k}-1\right\} \\
& =\operatorname{ord} m_{\alpha, v}
\end{aligned}
$$

(3) If $m_{\alpha}$ is irreducible then the statements $m_{\alpha, v} \mid m_{\alpha}$ and $\operatorname{deg} m_{\alpha, v}>0$ are equivalent to $m_{\alpha, v}=m_{\alpha}$. (2) completes the argument.
(4) follows from (3) which implies that the orbits of $\langle\alpha\rangle$ in $V \backslash\{0\}$ are all of the same length.
(5) First note that if $\langle\alpha\rangle v=V \backslash\{0\}$ for one $v \in V$ then also for all $v \in V \backslash\{0\}$ (being all elements of the orbit). In particular, $U_{\alpha, v}=V$ and hence $m_{\alpha, v}=m_{\alpha}$ for all $v \neq 0$.

If $m_{\alpha}=g h$ we want to prove that either $m_{\alpha} \mid g$ or $m_{\alpha} \mid h$ : For $v \neq 0$ we obtain $0=m_{\alpha, v}(\alpha)(v)=(g h)(\alpha)(v)=(g(\alpha) \circ h(\alpha))(v)=g(\alpha)(h(\alpha)(v))$. Hence, either $h(\alpha)(v)=$ 0 or $v^{\prime}:=h(\alpha)(v) \neq 0$ and $g(\alpha)\left(v^{\prime}\right)=0$. In other words, either $m_{\alpha}=m_{\alpha, v} \mid h$ or $m_{\alpha}=m_{\alpha, v^{\prime}} \mid g$.
2.b. Period length. Let $V=K^{1 \times \ell}$ and $t \in V \backslash\{0\}$. Identify $\operatorname{Aut}_{K}(V)$ with $\mathrm{GL}_{\ell}(K)$ in the obvious way. Viewing the regular matrix $C$ (of Remark 2.5.(2)) as an automorphism we get $\chi=m_{C}$. Define $\chi_{t}:=m_{C, t}$.

Corollary 2.10. From the last theorem we easily deduce
(1) $\operatorname{per} c=\operatorname{ord} \chi$.
(2) $\operatorname{per}\langle c, t\rangle=$ ord $\chi_{t}$ for $t \neq 0$.
(3) If $\chi$ is irreducible then $\operatorname{per}\langle c, t\rangle=\operatorname{per} c$ for all $t \neq 0$.

And in case $K=\mathbb{F}_{q}$ (i.e., finite with $q$ elements):
(4) If $\chi$ is irreducible then per $c \mid q^{\ell}-1$.
(5) If $\operatorname{per} c=q^{\ell}-1$ then $\chi$ is irreducible.

Example 2.11. Let $K=\mathbb{F}_{2}$.
(1) Consider the 3-bit LFSR (i.e., of degree $\ell=3$ ) and maximum possible period length $q^{\ell}-1=8-1=7$.

| $c^{\operatorname{tr}}$ | $\chi$ | irred. | $l$ | orbit lengths |
| :---: | ---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| $(1,0,0)$ | $x^{3}+1$ | false | $100\|100,110\| 110,1 \mid 111$ | $3+3+1$ |
| $(1,1,0)$ | $x^{3}+x+1$ | true | $1001011 \mid 100$ | 7 |
| $(1,0,1)$ | $x^{3}+x^{2}+1$ | true | $1001110 \mid 100$ | 7 |
| $(1,1,1)$ | $x^{3}+x^{2}+x+1$ | false | $1001\|100,01\| 010,1 \mid 111$ | $4+2+1$ |

(2) Consider the 4 -bit LFSR (i.e., of degree $\ell=4$ ) and maximum possible period length $q^{\ell}-1=16-1=15$.

| $c^{\mathrm{tr}}$ | $\chi$ | irred. | $s$ | orbit lengths |
| :---: | ---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| $(1,1,0,0)$ | $x^{4}+x+1$ | true | $100010011010111 \mid 1000$ | 15 |
| $(1,0,0,1)$ | $x^{4}+x^{3}+1$ | true | $100011110101100 \mid 1000$ | 15 |
| $(1,1,1,1)$ | $x^{4}+x^{3}+x^{2}+x+1$ | true | $10001\|1000,01001\| 0100$ | $5+5+5$ |
| $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ | $10100 \mid 1010$ |
| $\vdots$ |  |  |  |  |

Definition 2.12. We call a linear recurrence equation irreducible if $\chi$ is irreducible. If moreover $K=\mathbb{F}_{q}$ is a finite field then we call the LRE transitive if per $c=q^{\ell}-1$, where $\ell$ is its degree.

REMARK 2.13. There are faster ways to compute per $c$ and to decide the transitivity of LREs. Consider for example $c=(1,1,0,0)^{\text {tr }}$ with $\chi=x^{4}+x+1$ in the above table. Since $\chi$ is irreducible we know from the above corollary that ord $\chi \mid 15$. It is obvious that $\chi \nmid x^{k}-1$ for $k=1,3,5$ (these are the divisors of 15). Hence per $c=\operatorname{ord} \chi=15$, the maximal possible period length, i.e., the corresponding LFSR is transitive.

ExERCISE 2.14. Classify all irreducible 4-bit LFSRs. How many of them are transitive?
Remark 2.15. The Mersenne twister [Wik10j] is a modern pseudo-random bit generator with an impressive period length.

## 3. Finite fields

3.a. Field extensions. Recall, if $K \leq L$ is a field extension, then $L$ is a $K$-vector space. The degree of the field extension $K \leq L$ is defined as the dimension of $L$ as a $K$-vector space:

$$
[L: K]:=\operatorname{dim}_{K} L .
$$

For a 2-step field extension $K \leq L \leq M$ the degree formula

$$
[M: K]=[M: L] \cdot[L: K]
$$

is a direct consequence of the definition.
In what follows we only deal with finite field extensions $K \leq L$, i.e., where

$$
d:=[L: K]<\infty .
$$

For any element $\alpha \in L$ the $d+1$ elements $1, \alpha, \ldots, \alpha^{d}$ are always $K$-linearly dependent, which leads us to the next definition:

Definition 3.1. Let $K \leq L$ be a finite field extension an $\alpha \in L$. The unique monic generator of the vanishing (principal) ideal $I_{\alpha, K}:=\{f \in K[x] \mid f(\alpha)=0\}$ is called the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$ over the ground field $K$, and denoted by $m_{\alpha, K}$, or simply $m_{\alpha}$, if no confusion can occur about the ground field $K$.

REMARK 3.2. In the above definition the field $L$ can be replaced by a (finite dimensional) $K$-algebra $L$. This gives a common generalization of the two definitions $m_{\varphi}$ and $m_{\alpha, K}$ above, where in the former case $L=\operatorname{End}_{K}(V)$.

REmark 3.3. Let $K \leq L$ be a finite field extension and $\alpha \in L$. The minimal polynomial $m_{\alpha}=m_{\alpha, K}$ satisfies the following properties:
(1) $f(\alpha)=0 \Longleftrightarrow m_{\alpha} \mid f$.
(2) $m_{\alpha}$ is irreducible in $K[x]$ and $1 \leq \operatorname{deg} m_{\alpha} \leq d$.
(3) If an irreducible monic polynomial $f \in K[x]$ satisfies $f(\alpha)=0$ then $f=m_{\alpha}$.

We now recall Kronecker's construction of field extensions:
Proposition 3.4. Let $K$ be a field and $f \in K[x]$. The residue class $K$-algebra $L:=$ $K[x] /\langle f\rangle$ is a field if and only if $f$ is irreducible. In this case $[L: K]=\operatorname{deg} f$ and $m_{\bar{x}}=m_{K, \bar{x}}=f$, where $\bar{x}:=x+\langle f\rangle \in K[x] /\langle f\rangle$.

Example 3.5.

- Let $f:=x-a$ for $a \in K$. Then $K[x] /\langle f\rangle \cong K$.
- Let $K$ be a subfield of $\mathbb{R}$, e.g., $K=\mathbb{Q}$ or $K=\mathbb{R}$. Then $f=x^{2}+1$ is irreducible and the field $K[x] /\langle f\rangle$ is an extension of degree 2 over $K$ with $(1, \bar{x})$ as a $K$-basis satisfying $\bar{x}^{2}=-1$.
- Let $K=\mathbb{F}_{2}$ and $f=x^{3}+x+1$. The degree 3 polynomial $f$ is irreducible since it has no roots in its field of definition $\mathbb{F}_{2}$. The field $L:=\mathbb{F}_{2}[x] /\langle f\rangle$ is an extension of degree 3 over $\mathbb{F}_{2}$ with $\left(1, x, x^{2}\right)$ as an $\mathbb{F}_{2}$-basis ${ }^{5}$ and elements

$$
L=\left\{0,1, x, x^{2}, 1+x, x+x^{2}, 1+x+x^{2}, 1+x^{2}\right\} .
$$

ExERCISE 3.6. Prove that the $\mathbb{F}_{2}$-algebra $L:=\mathbb{F}_{2}[x] /\left\langle x^{4}+x^{2}+1\right\rangle$ is not a field. Find all nonzero noninvertible elements in $L$. Show that $x$ is invertible in $L$. Determine the minimal polynomial $m_{\mathbb{F}_{2}, x}$ and show that it is reducible. Find all invertible elements different from 1 and invert them either by using their minimal polynomial (cf. Exercise 2.6) or by using the extended Euclidian algorithm.

## 3.b. Order of field elements.

Remark 3.7. Let $K$ be a field.
(1) Let $f \in K[x]$ be irreducible and $f \neq x$. Then $\bar{x} \neq 0$ in $L:=K[x] /\langle f\rangle$ and ord $f=\operatorname{ord} \bar{x}$ in the multiplicative group $L^{*}:=(L \backslash\{0\}, \cdot)$.
(2) Let $K \leq L$ be a (finite) field extension and $\alpha \in L^{*}$. Then ord $m_{\alpha, K}=\operatorname{ord} \alpha$ in the multiplicative group $L^{*}$.
Proof. (1) $\bar{x}^{k}=1 \Longleftrightarrow f \mid x^{k}-1$.
(2) $\alpha^{k}=1 \Longleftrightarrow \alpha$ is a root of $x^{k}-1 \Longleftrightarrow m_{\alpha, K} \mid x^{k}-1$.

Corollary 3.8. Let $K=\mathbb{F}_{q}$ be the finite field with $q$ elements and $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ of degree n. Then
(1) $f$ irreducible $\Longrightarrow$ ord $f \mid q^{n}-1$.
(2) ord $f=q^{n}-1 \Longrightarrow f$ irreducible.

Proof. We can assume that $f$ is monic.
Case $f(0) \neq 0$ :
$\overline{\text { Take } V=K^{1 \times} \times n}$ and $\beta \in \operatorname{Aut}_{K}(V)$ with $m_{\beta}=f$ (e.g., $\beta: t \mapsto t \cdot C$, where $C$ is the companion matrix of $f$, which is due to $f(0) \neq 0$ regular). Now apply Proposition 2.9.(4),(5). Case $f(0)=0$ :
(1) $f=x$ is the only irreducible monic polynomial with $f(0)=0$. By definition ord $x: \stackrel{2.7}{=}$ ord $1=1$.
(2) Let $f=x^{r} \bar{f}$ with $\operatorname{deg} \bar{f} \leq n-1$. From (1) we deduce that ord $f=\operatorname{ord} \bar{f} \mid q^{n-1}-1$. Hence ord $f \neq q^{n}-1$.

Definition 3.9. Let $K=\mathbb{F}_{q}$ be a finite field with $q$ elements and $L$ a finite field extension of $\mathbb{F}_{q}$. We call

- a degree $n$ polynomial $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ primitive if ord $f=q^{n}-1$. Primitive polynomials are irreducible by the above corollary.

[^18]- an element $\alpha \in L^{*}$ primitive $^{6}$ if ord $\alpha=\left|L^{*}\right|$, i.e., if $L^{*}=\langle\alpha\rangle:=\left\{\alpha^{i} \mid i \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right\}$.

Remark 3.10. Let $K=\mathbb{F}_{q}$ a finite field with $q$ elements.
(1) Let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ be a primitive polynomial and $L:=\mathbb{F}_{q}[x] /\langle f\rangle$. Then $\bar{x}$ is a primitive element of $L$.
(2) If $\mathbb{F}_{q} \leq L$ is a finite field extension then $\alpha \in L^{*}$ is primitive iff $m_{\alpha, K}$ is a primitive polynomial (of degree $[L: K]$ ).

Proof. (1) Define $n:=\operatorname{deg} f$. Then $|L|=q^{n}$ and $\left|L^{*}\right|=q^{n}-1$. Now use that $\operatorname{ord} \bar{x} \stackrel{3.7 .(1)}{=}$ ord $f=q^{n}-1$.
(2) Define $n:=[L: K]$. If $L^{*}=\langle\alpha\rangle$ then ord $\alpha=\left|L^{*}\right|=q^{n}-1$. Set $f=m_{\alpha, K}$. Remark 3.7.(2) implies that ord $f=\operatorname{ord} \alpha=q^{n}-1$. Using that $\operatorname{deg} f \leq n$ and that ord $f \mid q^{\operatorname{deg} f}-1$ (Corollary 3.8.(1)) we conclude that $n=\operatorname{deg} f$ and finally the primitivity of $f=m_{\alpha, K}$.

Exercise 3.11. Let $L:=\mathbb{F}_{2}[x] /\langle f\rangle$ and
(1) $f:=x^{3}+x+1$. Prove that $f$ is a primitive polynomial, or equivalently, that $\bar{x} \in L$ is a primitive element, i.e., $L^{*}=\langle\bar{x}\rangle$.
(2) $f:=x^{4}+x^{3}+x^{2}+x+1$. First prove that $L$ is a field. Prove that $f$ is an imprimitive polynomial, or equivalently, that $\bar{x} \in L$ is an imprimitive ${ }^{7}$ element, i.e., $L^{*} \neq\langle\bar{x}\rangle$
3.c. Some field theory. Let $K$ be a field. Recall:

- $K[x]$ is a Gaussian domain ${ }^{8}$. A more suggestive name is unique factorization domain (UFD) or simply factorial domain ${ }^{9}$.
- For $f \in K[x]$ the following holds:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& -f(a)=0 \Longleftrightarrow(x-a) \mid f \\
& -f(a)=f^{\prime}(a)=0 \Longleftrightarrow(x-a)^{2} \mid f, \text { where } f^{\prime} \text { is the derivative of } f \text { w.r.t. } x \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

- The characteristic of $K$ is defined as char $K=\min \{c \in \mathbb{N} \mid c \cdot 1=0\}$ or 0. i.e., it is the unique nonnegative generator of the principal ideal $\operatorname{ker}(\mathbb{Z} \rightarrow K, c \mapsto c \cdot 1) \triangleleft$ $\mathbb{Z}$. char $K$ is either zero or a prime number.
- If char $K=p>0$ then $\mathbb{F}_{p} \leq K$. Else $\mathbb{Q} \leq K$. The fields $\mathbb{F}_{p} \cong \mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z}$ resp. $\mathbb{Q}=\operatorname{Quot}(\mathbb{Z})$ are therefore called prime fields. Each field contains exactly one prime field as the smallest subfield.
- For a finite field extension $K \leq L$ define for an element $\alpha \in L$ the smallest subring of $L$ containing $K$ and $\alpha$

$$
K[\alpha]:=\left\{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_{i} \alpha^{i} \mid n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}, \lambda_{i} \in K\right\}
$$

[^19]- The vanishing ideal $I_{\alpha, K}=\left\langle m_{\alpha, K}\right\rangle$ is the kernel of the ring epimorphism $K[x] \rightarrow$ $K[\alpha], x \mapsto \alpha$. Hence $K[\alpha] \cong K[x] /\left\langle m_{\alpha, K}\right\rangle$ as $K$-algebras and $K(\alpha):=K[\alpha]$ is a field with $[K(\alpha): K]=\operatorname{deg} m_{\alpha, K}$. The field $K(\alpha)$ is called the intermediate field ${ }^{10}$ generated by $\alpha$.

Example 3.12. Let $L:=\mathbb{F}_{2}[x] /\left\langle x^{4}+x^{3}+x^{2}+x+1\right\rangle$ as in Exercise 3.11.(2). The

Begin
Lect. 11 element $\alpha:=\bar{x}^{3}+\bar{x}^{2}+1$ satisfies $\alpha^{2}=\bar{x}^{3}+\bar{x}^{2}$. Hence $m_{\mathbb{F}_{2}, \alpha}=x^{2}+x+1$ and $\mathbb{F}_{2}(\alpha)=\mathbb{F}_{2}[\alpha]$ is an intermediate field of degree $\left[\mathbb{F}_{2}(\alpha): \mathbb{F}_{2}\right]=2: K(\alpha)=K+K \alpha=\{0,1, \alpha, 1+\alpha\}$.

Proposition 3.13. Let $K \leq L$ a field extension and $f \in K[x]$ a monic irreducible with $f(\alpha)=f\left(\alpha^{\prime}\right)=0$ for two elements $\alpha, \alpha^{\prime} \in L$. Then $K(\alpha) \cong K\left(\alpha^{\prime}\right)$ as $K$-algebras (or as fields over $K)$.

Proof. $f(\alpha)=0$ and $f$ monic irreducible implies $f=m_{\alpha, K}$ by Remark 3.3.(3). The same ist true for $\alpha^{\prime}$. Hence $K(\alpha) \cong K[x] /\langle f\rangle \cong K\left(\alpha^{\prime}\right)$.

Now we recall the notion of the splitting field of a polynomial $f \in K[x]$.
Definition 3.14. Let $K \leq L$ and $f \in K[x]$. We say

- $f$ splits over ${ }^{11} L$ if $f$ splits as a product of linear factors (when viewed as a polynomial) over $L[x]$.
- $L$ is a splitting field ${ }^{12}$ of $f$ over $K$ if $f$ splits over $L$ and $L$ is minimal with this property.
REMARK 3.15. If $f$ splits over $L$ with roots $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}$ then $K\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right)=K\left[\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right]$ is a splitting field of $f$ contained in $L$.

Theorem 3.16. For each $f \in K[x]$ there exists a splitting field, unique up to $K$-isomorphism.

Proof. The above remark shows that it is enough to construct a field $M \geq K$ over which $f$ splits. We may assume ${ }^{13}$ that $f$ is irreducible (otherwise we do the following for all factors). The field $L:=K[x] /\langle f\rangle$ contains (at least) one root of $f$ which is $\alpha:=\bar{x}$. Hence $f=(x-\alpha) \bar{f} \in L[x]$. Proceed by induction on $\operatorname{deg} f$.

We thus talk about the splitting field of $f$ over $K$.
3.d. Finite fields. Recall, char $K=p>0$ means that $p \alpha=0$ for any $\alpha$ in any field extension $L \geq K$.

Lemma 3.17. Let $K$ be a field with char $K=p>0$. For each $i \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ the map $\varphi_{i}: K \rightarrow K, x \mapsto x^{p^{i}}$ is an automorphism of $K$ which fixes the prime field $\mathbb{F}_{p}$. It is called the $i$-th Frobenius automorphism of $K$.

[^20]Proof. Since $\varphi_{i}=\varphi_{1}^{i}$ it suffices to consider $i=1$. Of course $1^{p}=1$ and $(\alpha \beta)^{p}=\alpha^{p} \beta^{p}$ in any field of any characteristic. We therefore only need to prove the "characteristic $p$ formula"

$$
(\alpha \pm \beta)^{p}=\alpha^{p} \pm \beta^{p} .
$$

Indeed the binomial theorem $(\alpha+\beta)^{p}=\sum_{k=0}^{p}\binom{p}{k} \alpha^{k} \beta^{p-k}$ implies the statement since $\binom{p}{0}=\binom{p}{p}=1$ and $p \left\lvert\,\binom{ p}{k}\right.$ for $0<k<p$. Proving the bijectiveness is an exercise.

Theorem 3.18. Let $K$ be a field of prime characteristic $p, n \in \mathbb{N}$, and $q:=p^{n}$. Consider $f:=x^{q}-x \in \mathbb{F}_{p}[x]$.
(1) $f$ splits over $K$ if and only if $K$ contains exactly one subfield with $q$ elements.
(2) $K$ is the splitting field of $f$ if and only if $|K|=q$.

Proof. Set

$$
N:=\{\alpha \in K \mid f(\alpha)=0\} .
$$

Hence $|N| \leq q$. Since $f$ has no multiple roots $\left(f^{\prime}=-1 \Longrightarrow \operatorname{gcd}\left(f, f^{\prime}\right)=1\right)$ we conclude that $f$ splits of $K \Longleftrightarrow|N|=q$. The previous lemma implies that $N$ is an intermediate field of $K: \alpha, \beta \in N \Longrightarrow(\alpha-\beta)^{q}=\alpha^{q}-\beta^{q}=\alpha-\beta$ and we are done with the forward implication in (1).
Now let $M \leq K$ be a subfield with $q$ elements. Since $\left|M^{*}\right|=q-1$ it follows that every $\alpha \in M^{*}$ is a root of $f=x\left(x^{q-1}-1\right)$, hence $M \leq N$. From $|N| \leq q$ we conclude that $M=N$. This proves the uniqueness of $M=N$ and that $f$ splits over a field $K$ containing $N$.
(2) follows from (1) and the minimality of the splitting field.

Corollary 3.19.
(1) If $K$ is a finite field then char $K=p>0$ and $|K|=p^{n}$.
(2) For each prime power $q=p^{n}$ there exists up to $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-isomorphism exactly one field with $q$ elements.

Proof.
(1) Since $K$ is finite its characteristic char $K=p>0$ is prime. Hence, $\mathbb{F}_{p}$ is the prime field of $K$ and, in particular, $K$ is an $\mathbb{F}_{p}$-vector space. So $|K|=p^{n}$, where $n=\left[K: \mathbb{F}_{p}\right]:=\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbb{F}_{p}} K$.
(2) follows from Theorem 3.18.(2) and the uniqueness of the splitting field applied to the polynomial $f=x^{q}-x$.

We have been referring to this field as $\mathbb{F}_{q}$. Now we can say "the field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ ".
Corollary 3.20. The finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}=\mathbb{F}_{p^{n}}$ contains the unique subfield (isomorphic to) $\mathbb{F}_{p^{d}}$ if and only if $d \mid$ n. I.e.

$$
\mathbb{F}_{p^{d}} \leq \mathbb{F}_{p^{n}} \Longleftrightarrow d \mid n .
$$

In other word, the subfield lattice ${ }^{14}$ of $\mathbb{F}_{p^{n}}$ is isomorphic to the lattice of divisors of $n$ (regardless of the prime number $p$ ).

Proof. Let $K \leq \mathbb{F}_{q}=\mathbb{F}_{p}^{n}$. Then $K$ has characteristic $p$ and the prime field $\mathbb{F}_{p}$ of $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ is the prime field of $K$. Hence $K=\mathbb{F}_{p^{d}}$ for some $1 \leq d \leq n$. The degree formula $n=\left[\mathbb{F}_{p^{n}}: \mathbb{F}_{p}\right]=\left[\mathbb{F}_{p^{n}}: \mathbb{F}_{p^{d}}\right] \underbrace{\left[\mathbb{F}_{p^{d}}: \mathbb{F}_{p}\right]}_{d}$ implies that $d \mid n$.
Now we proof the converse. Let $d \mid n$. First note that $\alpha^{p^{d}}=\alpha$ implies $\alpha^{p^{n}}=\alpha$. In particular, the roots of $x^{p^{d}}-x$ are all roots of $x^{p^{n}}-x$. So $x^{p^{d}}-x$ splits over $\mathbb{F}_{p^{n}}$. Theorem 3.18.(1) then states that $\mathbb{F}_{p^{n}}$ contains the unique field with $p^{d}$ elements.

Example 3.21.

- $\mathbb{F}_{4} \not \subset \mathbb{F}_{8}$, but $\mathbb{F}_{4}<\mathbb{F}_{16}$.
- The subfield lattice of $\mathbb{F}_{p^{12}}$ is isomorphic to the divisor lattice of 12

3.e. Irreducible polynomials over finite fields. We know that we can construct the finite field $\mathbb{F}_{p^{n}}$ as the splitting field of $x^{p^{n}}-x$. This would eventually involve iterated Kronecker constructions. So it is natural to ask if we can get the job done with just one Kronecker construction. This question is equivalent to asking if there exists an irreducible polynomial of degree $n$ over $\mathbb{F}_{p}$.

Exercise 3.22. Let $K$ be a field and $f \in K[x]$ with $f(0) \neq 0$. Then ord $f \mid k \Longleftrightarrow$ $f \mid x^{k}-1$.

Corollary 3.23. Let $K=\mathbb{F}_{q}$ with $q=p^{n}$.
(1) Each irreducible polynomial $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ with $\operatorname{deg} f=n$ is square free ${ }^{1516}$ and splits over $\mathbb{F}_{q^{n}}$.
(2) $\mathbb{F}_{q}[x] /\langle f\rangle \cong \mathbb{F}_{q^{n}}$ for all irreducible $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ with $\operatorname{deg} f=n$.

## Proof.

[^21](1) Corollary 3.8.(1) states that ord $f \mid q^{n}-1$ which is equivalent to $f \mid x^{q^{n}}-x=$ $x\left(x^{q^{n}-1}-1\right)$ by the above exercise. But the polynomial $x^{q^{n}}-x$ splits with distinct roots over $\mathbb{F}_{q^{n}}$ by Theorem 3.18 and its proof (applied to $q^{n}$ ). The same holds for the divisor $f$.
(2) The statement follows from $\left|\mathbb{F}_{q}[x] /\langle f\rangle\right|=q^{n}$ and Theorem 3.18.(2).

Begin
Lect. 12
Definition 3.24. Set

$$
A(d)=A(d, q):=\mid\left\{f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]: f \text { irreducible monic with } \operatorname{deg} f=d\right\} \mid
$$

Theorem 3.25. For $K=\mathbb{F}_{q}$ the numbers $A(d)$ satisfy

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{d \mid n} d A(d)=q^{n} \tag{*}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular, $A(1)=q$ and $A(d)=\frac{q^{d}-q}{d}$ if $d$ is prime.
Proof. Set $L:=\mathbb{F}_{q^{n}}$. We know that $\mathbb{F}_{q^{d}} \leq L \Longleftrightarrow d \mid n$. First note that a polynomial $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ with $\operatorname{deg} f \mid n$ is the minimal polynomial of $d$ elements in $L$. This follows from Corollary 3.23.(1). $f$ is then the minimal polynomial of all its $d$ roots and of no other element in $L$. Now recall that $\operatorname{deg} m_{\alpha, \mathbb{F}_{q}} \mid n$ for all $\alpha \in L$ by the degree formula. This finishes the proof.

EXAMPLE 3.26. Now we list all minimal polynomials ( = irreducible monic polynomials) together with their degrees for the following fields:

- $K=\mathbb{F}_{4}$

$$
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c}
m_{\alpha, \mathbb{F}_{2}} & x & x+1 & x^{2}+x+1 & \\
\hline \operatorname{deg} & 1 & 1 & 2 & \sum=4
\end{array}
$$

- $K=\mathbb{F}_{16}$

$$
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c}
m_{\alpha, \mathbb{F}_{2}} & x & x+1 & x^{2}+x+1 & x^{4}+x+1 & x^{4}+x^{3}+1 & x^{4}+x^{3}+x^{2}+x+1 & \\
\hline \operatorname{deg} & 1 & 1 & 2 & 4 & 4 & 4 & \sum=16
\end{array}
$$

Remark 3.27. We list the following facts without proof:
(1) Asymptotically: $A(d) \sim \frac{q^{d}}{d}$.
(2) Since formula $\left(^{*}\right)$ is an inclusion-exclusion counting formula over a lattice one can use the MöbIus function

$$
\mu(d):=\left\{\begin{aligned}
1 & , \quad d=1 \\
0 & , d \text { is not square free } \\
(-1)^{k} & , \quad d \text { is the product of } k \text { distinct primes }
\end{aligned}\right.
$$

to "invert" it:

$$
A(n)=\frac{1}{n} \sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) q^{\frac{n}{d}}
$$

Example 3.28. $A(20, q)=\frac{1}{20}\left(q^{20}-q^{10}-q^{4}+q^{2}\right)$.
3.f. Primitive polynomials. Counting primitive polynomials is much simpler.

Proposition 3.29. Let $K$ be a field and $U$ a finite subgroup of $K^{*}$. Then $U$ is cyclic.
Proof. Exercise.
Corollary 3.30. Let $\varphi$ denote EULER's totient function ${ }^{17}$
(1) There are exactly $\varphi(q-1)$ primitive elements in $\mathbb{F}_{q}$.
(2) There are exactly $\frac{\varphi\left(q^{d}-1\right)}{d}$ primitive monic polynomials of degree $d$ in $\mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$.

## Proof.

(1) Proposition 3.29 implies that the multiplicative group $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$ is cyclic, in particular $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}=\left\{a^{0}, a^{1}, \ldots, a^{q-2}\right\} . a^{i}$ is primitive $\Longleftrightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(i, q-1)=1$.
(2) Every primitive $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ of degree $d$ is the minimal polynomial of exactly $d$ primitive elements in $L=\mathbb{F}_{q^{d}}$. This follows from the irreducibility of $f$ (Corollary 3.8.(2)) and Remark 3.10 using (1) and the same argument as in the proof of Theorem 3.25.

Example 3.31. In the exercises we will see how to use the Frobenius automorphisms to construct irreducible and primitive polynomials over finite fields. In the following two examples we mainly sum up computations we did before:
(1) $\mathbb{F}_{4}=\mathbb{F}_{2^{2}}=\{0,1, \omega, 1+\omega\}$ with $\omega^{2}+\omega+1=0 . \omega$ and $1+\omega$ are all primitive elements of $\mathbb{F}_{4}$ and their minimal polynomial $x^{2}+x+1$ the only irreducible and primitive polynomial of degree 2 over $\mathbb{F}_{2}$.
(2) There are $\varphi(16-1)=8$ primitive elements in $\mathbb{F}_{16}=\mathbb{F}_{2^{4}}=\mathbb{F}_{4^{2}}$. Hence there are $\frac{8}{2}=4$ primitive polynomials

$$
x^{2}+x+\omega, \quad x^{2}+x+\omega^{2}, \quad x^{2}+\omega x+\omega, \quad x^{2}+\omega^{2} x+\omega^{2}
$$

of degree 2 over $\mathbb{F}_{4}$ and $\frac{8}{4}=2$ primitive polynomials

$$
x^{4}+x+1, \quad x^{4}+x^{3}+1
$$

of degree 4 over $\mathbb{F}_{2}$. The polynomial $x^{4}+x^{3}+x^{2}+x+1=\frac{x^{5}-1}{x-1}$ is the only irreducible imprimitive polynomial of degree 4 over $\mathbb{F}_{2}$.

Example 3.32. We compare $A(d)$ and the number of primitive polynomials of degree $d$ over $\mathbb{F}_{2}$ :

| $d$ | 1 | $\underline{2}$ | $\underline{3}$ | 4 | $\underline{5}$ | 6 | $\underline{7}$ | 8 | 9 | 10 | $\underline{11}$ | 16 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $A(d, 2)$ | 2 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 18 | 30 | 56 | 99 | 186 | 4080 |
| primitive | 2 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 6 | 6 | 18 | 16 | 48 | 60 | 176 | 2048 |

[^22]We will be using primitive polynomials $\chi$ over finite fields to construct pseudo-random sequences $s=\langle c, t\rangle$ of maximal possible period lengths (cf. Definition 2.4). Since $\chi=$ $\chi_{c}$ will be part of the secret key, we need to know how to randomly choose primitive polynomials. The idea will be to randomly choose a polynomial and then to test its primitiveness.

## 4. Statistical tests

Let $X_{n}$ and $U_{n}$ denote random variables with values in $\{0,1\}^{n}$ where $U_{n}$ is the uniformly distributed one. Note that any map $f:\{0,1\}^{n} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{m}$ induces a random variable $Y_{m}:=f \circ X_{n}$.

Example 4.1. Define linear pseudo-random bit generator $G$ as the map

$$
G:\left\{\begin{array}{ccc}
\{0,1\}^{2 \ell} & \rightarrow & \{0,1\} \\
(c, t) & \mapsto & \langle c, t\rangle
\end{array}\right.
$$

where we consider the pair $(c, t)$ as an $\ell$-bit LFSR given by $c \in \mathbb{F}_{2}^{\ell \times 1}$ and initial value $t \in \mathbb{F}_{2}^{1 \times \ell}$. By truncation to first $n$ bits we get a map

$$
G_{n}:\left\{\begin{aligned}
\{0,1\}^{2 \ell} & \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{n} \\
(c, t) & \mapsto\langle c, t\rangle_{i=0, \ldots, n-1}
\end{aligned}\right.
$$

Define the random variable

$$
X:=G \circ U_{2 \ell}
$$

In words, $X$ is a (linear) pseudo-random bit generator with random seed. Define the finite random variable

$$
X_{n}:=G_{n} \circ U_{2 \ell}
$$

with values in $\{0,1\}^{n}$.
Our goal will be to compare $X_{n}$ with $U_{n}$.
Definition 4.2. A (polynomial) statistical test is a polynomial probabilistic algorithm

$$
A:\left\{\begin{array}{ccc}
\{0,1\} & \rightarrow & \{0,1\} \\
s & \mapsto & A(s)
\end{array} .\right.
$$

We say the $s \in\{0,1\}^{n}$ passes the test $A$ only if $A(s)=1$.
REmARK 4.3. The composition $A \circ X_{n}$ is a random variable with values in $\{0,1\}$ for any random variable $X_{n}$ (with values in $\{0,1\}^{n}$ ). $\mu_{A \circ X_{n}}(1)$ is the probability that an $s \in\{0,1\}^{n}$ that was chosen according to $X_{n}$ passes the test $A$.

The idea is to construct statistical tests $A$ where $s \in\{0,1\}^{n}$ only passes $A$ if it was chosen randomly, i.e., according to $U_{n}$.
4.a. Statistical randomness. The idea is to choose a statistic

$$
S:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}
$$

such that the distribution of $S \circ U_{n}$ converges to a continuous probability density $f$. Recall, a continuous ${ }^{18}$ real valued random variable $X: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ has a probability density $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ satisfying the probability $P_{X}(I)=P(X \in I)=\int_{I} f(x) d x$ for any interval $I \subset \mathbb{R}$.

Example 4.4. For $\alpha \in(0,1)$ choose an interval $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ (as small as possible) with $\int_{I} f(x) d x>1-\alpha$, or, equivalently, $\int_{\mathbb{R} \backslash I} f(x) d x<\alpha$. Define the statistical test $A:=A_{S, \alpha}$ induced by the statistic $S$ by setting

$$
A_{S, \alpha}(s):=\left\{\begin{array}{lll}
1 & \text { if } & S(s) \in I \\
0 & \text { if } & S(s) \notin I
\end{array} .\right.
$$

Then $\mu_{A \circ U_{n}}(1)>1-\alpha$ and, equivalently, $\mu_{A \circ U_{n}}(0)<\alpha$. The real number $\alpha$ is called the significance level ${ }^{19}$.

Recall that the expected value of the real valued random variable $X$ with density $f$ can be computed as $E(X):=\int_{x \in \mathbb{R}} x f(x) d x$. The variance ${ }^{20}$ is defined by

$$
\operatorname{Var}(X):=E\left((X-E(X))^{2}\right)=E\left(X^{2}\right)-E(X)^{2}
$$

Remark 4.5. Let $X, Y$ be two (finite) random variables and $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$.

Begin
Lect. 13
(1) $E$ is linear, i.e.

$$
E(a X+b Y)=a E(X)+b E(Y)
$$

(2) If $X$ and $Y$ are independent then

$$
\operatorname{Var}(a X+b Y+c)=a^{2} \operatorname{Var}(X)+b^{2} \operatorname{Var}(Y)
$$

(3) If $Y$ is discrete and uniformly distributed and $\left(Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n}\right)$ the $n$-fold independent repetition of the experiment $Y$. Then $Z_{n}:=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{Y_{i}-E(Y)}{\sqrt{n \operatorname{Var}(Y)}}\right)=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} Y_{i}-n E(Y)}{\sqrt{n \operatorname{Var}(Y)}}$ converges to the standard normal distribution ${ }^{21} N(0,1)$ with expected value 0 and variance 1 (see Appendix 1.b).

$$
\text { Proof. } E\left(Z_{n}\right)=0 \text { and } \operatorname{Var}\left(Z_{n}\right)=\frac{n \operatorname{Var}(Y)}{n \operatorname{Var}(Y)}=1
$$

Example 4.6. We now give two examples of polynomial statistical tests.
(1) Monobit (or balance) test: Since $E\left(U_{1}\right)=\frac{1}{2}$ and $\operatorname{Var}\left(U_{1}\right)=\frac{1}{4}$ we define the statistic $S:\{0,1\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$

$$
S\left(s_{0} s_{1} \ldots s_{n-1}\right):=\frac{\sum_{i} s_{i}-\frac{n}{2}}{\sqrt{\frac{n}{4}}}=\frac{2 \sum_{i} s_{i}-n}{\sqrt{n}}
$$

[^23]according to Remark 4.5.(3). Hence $S \circ U_{n}$ is an approximation of $N(0,1)$ for $n$ large. For a given significance level $\alpha \in(0,1)$ choose $I=(-x, x)$ with $\operatorname{erfc}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}\right)<$ $\alpha$, i.e., $x<\sqrt{2} \operatorname{erfc}^{-1}(\alpha)$. Define
\[

A:\left\{$$
\begin{array}{cl}
\{0,1\}^{n} & \rightarrow\{0,1\} \\
s & \mapsto\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
1 & \text { if }|S(s)|<x \\
0 & \text { otherwise }
\end{array}=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
1 & \text { if }\left|\sum_{i} s_{i}-\frac{n}{2}\right|<d \\
0 & \text { otherwise }
\end{array},\right.\right.
\end{array}
$$\right.
\]

where $d:=\sqrt{\frac{n}{2}} \operatorname{erfc}^{-1}(\alpha)$. Then $\mu_{A \circ U_{n}}(1)>1-\alpha$ and, equivalently, $\mu_{A \circ U_{n}}(0)<\alpha$. For example, a bit sequence of length $n=20000$ passes the monobit test with significance level $\alpha=10^{-6}$ if the number of ones lies in the interval $\left(\frac{n}{2}-d, \frac{n}{2}+d\right) \approx$ (9654, 10346).
(2) Autocorrelation test: The autocorrelation test on the bit sequence $s=\left(s_{i}\right) \in$ $\mathbb{F}_{2}^{\mathbb{N}_{0}}$ with distance $d$ is the monobit test on the bit sequence $s^{\prime}=\left(s_{i}+s_{i+d}\right) \in \mathbb{F}_{2}^{\mathbb{N}_{0}}$.
(3) There are much more such tests. See, for example, the so-called runs test [Wik10i].
REmARK 4.7. LFSRs have good statistical properties; in particular, their output passes all statistical tests in the above example. Indeed, if $A$ is the monobit test then $\mu_{A \circ X_{n}}(1) \approx 1$ for $X_{n}=G_{n} \circ U_{2 \ell}(c f$. Example 4.1).

Sketch of Proof. Each period of a primitive $\ell$-bit LFSR (with maximal possible period length $2^{\ell}-1$ ) consists of exactly $2^{\ell-1}-1$ zeros and $2^{\ell-1}$ ones.
4.b. Unpredictability. Passing all statistical randomness tests is not enough for a pseudo-random bit generators to be cryptographically secure. It must be "unpredictable" as well.

REMARK 4.8 (Predictability of an LFSR). Let $s=\langle c, t\rangle$ be the output of an $\ell$-bit LFSR of which $2 \ell$ consecutive bits are known, say $s_{0}, \ldots, s_{2 \ell-1}$, w.l.o.g. ${ }^{22}$. Hence the $\ell$ consecutive vectors $t^{(0)}, \ldots, t^{(\ell-1)} \in \mathbb{F}_{2}^{1 \times \ell}$ are known. They satisfy the equation

$$
\left(\begin{array}{c}
t^{(0)} \\
\vdots \\
t^{(\ell-1)}
\end{array}\right) \cdot c=\left(\begin{array}{c}
s_{\ell} \\
\vdots \\
s_{2 \ell-1}
\end{array}\right)
$$

This inhomogeneous linear system is solvable by our assumption on $s$. And there exists a unique solution for $c$ if and only if $t^{(0)}, \ldots, t^{(\ell-1)}$ are $\mathbb{F}_{2}$-linearly independent. In this case the next-bit $s_{2 \ell}=\left(s_{\ell} \cdots s_{2 \ell-1}\right) \cdot c$ can be predicted. This last condition is satisfied when the LFSR is irreducible and $t^{(0)} \neq 0$.

ExAmple 4.9. For $\ell=4$ and $s=10101111 ? ? \ldots$ we solve

$$
\left(\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\
0 & 1 & 1 & 1
\end{array}\right) \cdot c=\left(\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
1 \\
1 \\
1
\end{array}\right)
$$

[^24]and obtain the unique solution $c=\left(\begin{array}{l}1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0\end{array}\right)$. The complete sequence is $101011110001001 \mid 1010$ (cf. Example 2.11).

Definition 4.10. Let $P$ be a statistical test. The next-bit test with predictability $P$ is the statistical test $A:=A_{P}$ defined by

$$
s=s_{0} \ldots s_{n} \mapsto A_{P}(s)=\left\{\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \text { if } & P\left(s_{0} \ldots s_{n-1}\right)=s_{n} \\
1 & \text { if } & P\left(s_{0} \ldots s_{n-1}\right) \neq s_{n}
\end{array} .\right.
$$

In words, 0 for correct prediction and 1 for incorrect prediction. Note that if $P$ is polynomial then so is $A_{P}$.

Note that $\mu_{A_{P} \circ U_{n}}(1)=\mu_{A_{P} \circ U_{n}}(0)=\frac{1}{2}$, regardless of $P$.
Example 4.11 (Linear predictability of an LFSR). Define the statistical test $P$ by setting

$$
P(s):=\left(s_{\ell} \cdots s_{2 \ell-1}\right) \cdot c
$$

where $s=s_{0}, \ldots, s_{2 \ell-1} \in\{0,1\}^{2 \ell}$ and $c$ computed as in Remark 4.8 (a not necessarily unique solution). Remark 4.8 implies $^{23}$ that $\mu_{A_{P} \circ X_{2 \ell+1}}(1)=0$ for $X_{2 \ell+1}=G_{2 \ell+1} \circ U_{2 \ell}$ (cf. Example 4.1). An LFSR is (linearly predictable) and in its original form cryptographically insecure.

## 5. Cryptographically secure pseudo-random bit generators

Again, let $X_{n}$ and $U_{n}$ be random variables with values in $\{0,1\}^{n}$ where $U_{n}$ is the uniformly distributed one.

## Definition 5.1.

(1) A polynomial deterministic algorithm $G:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\bullet}$ is called a pseudorandom bit generator (PRBG) if there is a function $n: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ with $n(k)>k$ and $G\left(\{0,1\}^{k}\right) \subset\{0,1\}^{n(k)}$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$. The function $n$ is called the stretch function of $G$.
(2) A function $f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is called negligible ${ }^{24}$ if for each positive polynomial $p$ there exists a $k_{0} \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $|f(k)|<\frac{1}{p(k)}$ for all $k \geq k_{0}$. The function $f(k)=e^{-k}$ is a prominent example of a negligible function.
(3) We say that $G$ passes the statistical test $A$ if

$$
k \mapsto \mu_{A \circ G \circ U_{k}}(1)-\mu_{A \circ U_{n(k)}}(1)
$$

is negligible.

[^25](4) $G$ is called cryptographically secure (CSPRBG) if $G$ passes all polynomial tests.

In words, $G$ is cryptographically secure if an adversary with limited computational resources has no non-negligible advantage in predicting the next bit of the pseudo random sequence.

EXAMPLE 5.2. Let $n: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ be an arbitrary function with $n(k)>k$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$. Define $G$ by

$$
G\left(a_{0} a_{1} \ldots a_{k-1}\right):=\left\langle a_{0} \ldots a_{\ell-1}, a_{\ell} \ldots a_{2 \ell-1}\right\rangle_{i=0, \ldots, n(k)-1}, \quad \ell:=\left\lfloor\frac{k}{2}\right\rfloor
$$

the PRBG corresponding to LFSRs. For $P$ as in Example 4.11 we obtain $\mu_{A_{P} \circ G o U_{k}}(1)-$ $\mu_{A_{P} U_{n(k)}}(1) \equiv-\frac{1}{2}$, not negligible. Hence, LFSRs are not cryptographically secure (even for $n: k \mapsto k+1)$.

We state without proof:
Theorem 5.3 (YAO). A PRBG is cryptographically secure iff it is unpredictable, i.e., iff it passes all polynomial next-bit tests.
5.a. Empirical security. The problem with the LFSRs is basically their linearity. Here are some attempts to destroy this linearity.
(1) The first idea is to use the complete state vector $t^{(n)}=t^{(n-1)} C$ instead of simply returning its last entry $s_{n+\ell}$. For this use a non-linear "filter function" $f: \mathbb{F}_{2}^{1 \times \ell} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{2}$, which will be regarded as part of the secret key:

EXAMPLE 5.4 (Knapsack ${ }^{25}$ generator). Given a primitive $\ell$-bit LFSR (i.e., with period $2^{\ell}-1$ ), fix a natural number $k>\lg \ell$ and choose in some random way non-negative integers $a_{0}, \ldots, a_{\ell-1}$. They build together with the initial vector the secret key. Define the filter function $f(u):=\left(k\right.$-th last bit of $\left.\sum_{u_{i}=1} a_{i}\right)$ where $u=\left(u_{0} \ldots u_{\ell-1}\right) \in \mathbb{F}_{2}^{1 \times \ell}$.
(2) The second idea is combine several LFSRs clocked ${ }^{26}$ in different ways:

EXAMPLE 5.5 (Alternating step generator). Let $R$ be an LFSR generating a sequence $r=\left(r_{n}\right)$ and $S$ and $S^{\prime}$ two different LFSRs. Use $R$ to reclock $S$ and $S^{\prime}$ by resetting

$$
\begin{array}{rll}
s_{\ell+i}:=t^{(i)} \cdot c \text { and } s_{\ell+i}^{\prime}:=s_{\ell+i-1}^{\prime}, & \text { if } \quad r_{i}=0, \\
s_{\ell+i}^{\prime}:=t^{\prime(i)} \cdot c^{\prime} \text { and } s_{\ell+i}:=s_{\ell+i-1}, & \text { if } & r_{i}=1 .
\end{array}
$$

Define the resulting sequence to be $\left(s_{i}+s_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ (in the notation of Definition 2.1). For a C-implementation see [Wik10b].
(3) The third idea is that an LFSR throws away parts of another LFSR:

Example 5.6 (Shrinking generator). Two LFSRs are running in parallel and produce the bit sequences $s$ and $s^{\prime}$. If $s_{i}^{\prime}=1$ the bit $s_{i}$ is returned, otherwise it is discarded ${ }^{27}$.

[^26]5.b. Provable security. Let $f:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\bullet}$ be a polynomial deterministic algorithm. The question of whether there exists a polynomial algorithm that computes preimages ${ }^{28}$ of $f$ leads us to the next fundamental definition:

Definition 5.7. Let $f:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\bullet}$ be a polynomial deterministic algorithm. For an arbitrary polynomial probabilistic algorithm $A:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\bullet}$ define

$$
A_{f}:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}, \quad x \mapsto\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
1 & \text { if } f(A(f(x)))=f(x) \\
0 & \text { otherwise }
\end{array} .\right.
$$

(1) $f$ is called a one-way function (OWF $)^{29}$ if $k \mapsto \mu_{A_{f} \circ U_{k}}(1)$ is negligible for all $A$.
Let $b:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}$ be a polynomial deterministic algorithm. For an arbitrary polynomial statistical test (i.e., a polynomial probabilistic algorithm) $A:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}$ define

$$
A_{f, b}:\{0,1\} \bullet\{0,1\}, \quad x \mapsto\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
1 & \text { if } A(f(x))=b(x) \\
0 & \text { otherwise }
\end{array} .\right.
$$

(2) $b$ is called a hardcore predicate ${ }^{30}$ (or hardcore bit, or hidden bit) of $f$ if $k \mapsto \mu_{A_{f, b} \circ U_{k}}(1)-\frac{1}{2}$ is negligible for all $A$.

## Remark 5.8.

(1) If $f$ is injective (in words, does not lose information) and has a hardcore predicate then $f$ is a OWF.
(2) The existence of a hardcore predicate does not imply the injectivity of $f$. For example, the non-injective function $f$ defined by $f\left(s_{0} s_{1} \ldots s_{n}\right)=s_{1} \ldots s_{n}$ has the hardcore predicate $b\left(s_{0} s_{1} \ldots s_{n}\right)=s_{0}$.

Definition 5.9. A one-way permutation (OWP) is a bijective one way function which is length preserving, i.e., $f\left(\{0,1\}^{n}\right) \subset\{0,1\}^{n}$ and $f:\{0,1\}^{n} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{n}$ is a permutation for all $n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$.

Theorem 5.10. Let $f$ be a OWP with hardcore predicate b and $n: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ an arbitrary function with $n(k)>k$ which is bounded by some polynomial and which is computable by a polynomial run-time algorithm. Then the function $G:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\bullet}$ defined by

$$
G(s):=b(s) b(f(s)) \ldots b\left(f^{n(k)-1}(s)\right)
$$

is a CSPRBG with stretch function $n$.
Proof. Consider

$$
G^{\prime}(s):=b\left(f^{n(k)-1}(s)\right) \ldots b(f(s)) b(s) .
$$

Assume $G^{\prime}$ is not cryptographically secure. Then YaO's Theorem would imply the existence of a next-bit test $A_{P}$ which $G^{\prime}$ does not pass. But this contradicts $b$ being a hardcore bit

[^27]of $f$. The proof is complete since cryptographic security does not depend on the order of the output.

Lemma 5.11. Let $f$ be a $O W P$. Then

$$
g:\{0,1\}^{2 n} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{2 n}, \quad(x, y) \mapsto(f(x), y)
$$

with $|x|=|y|$ defines a OWP with the GOLDREICH-LEVIN hardcore predicate $b$ given by $b(x, y):=\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i} y_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{2}$.

Proof. This is a corollary of the Goldreich-Levin Theorem, see [Tre05].
Corollary 5.12. The existence of a CSPRBG is equivalent to the existence of a OWP.
Proof. The backward implication follows from Theorem 5.10 and Lemma 5.11. The forward implication is an exercise.
5.c. A CSPRBG based cryptosystem. We finish this chapter by constructing a cryptosystem based on a (public) CSPRBG $G$ with stretch function $n$.

Example 5.13. Define the symmetric cryptosystem $(P, C, K, \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{D})$ with $P=C=$ $\{0,1\}^{\bullet}, K=\{0,1\}^{k}$ for some security parameter $k:=\lceil\lg |K|\rceil \in \mathbb{N}$ (e.g., $k=128$ ), and $\mathcal{E}$ as follows:
For each $p \in P$ choose randomly a key $e \in K$ and a seed $s \in K$ and compute $G(s) \in$ $\{0,1\}^{n(k)}$. Set

$$
c=\mathcal{E}_{e}(p):=(s+e) \cdot(p+G(s))_{0, \ldots,|p|-1},
$$

where + is the bitwise addition and $\cdot$ the concatenation of bits. So $|c|$ is slightly bigger than $|p|$. If $|p|>n(k)$ then choose a new random seed. This cryptosystem has at least two advantages:

- After the receiver gets $s+e$ he can compute $s$ and can start to computing $G(s)$.
- The receiver can decrypt $c$ bitwise!


## CHAPTER 4

## AES and Block Ciphers

## 1. Block ciphers

Definition 1.1. A block cipher ${ }^{1}$ is a quadruple $(A, \ell, K, \mathcal{E})$ with finite sets $A$ and $K$, an $\ell \in \mathbb{N}, B:=A^{\ell}$, and $\mathcal{E}: B \times K \rightarrow B,(p, e) \mapsto \mathcal{E}_{e}(p)$, where $\mathcal{E}_{e}$ is a permutation for all $e \in K . A$ is the alphabet, $K$ the key space, and $B$ the blocks.

In Example 1.5 we will see several ways to construct a symmetric cryptosystem out of a block cipher.

Example 1.2. Let $A=F=\mathbb{F}_{2^{n}}=\mathbb{F}_{2} /\langle f\rangle$ be the finite field with $2^{n}$ elements. We list four different actions on $B:=F^{\ell}$.
(1) SubByte or S-box: The inversion in the field $F$ defines a permutation ${ }^{-1}: a \mapsto a^{-1}$ for $a \in F^{*}$ and $0^{-1}:=0$. This permutation is non-linear but fixes $0, \pm 1$. Choose an $\mathbb{F}_{2}$-linear invertible map $g: F \rightarrow F$ and an element $t \in F$ such that $\sigma: F \rightarrow$ $F, a \mapsto g a^{-1}+t$ is a fixed-point-free permutation (or derangement). Extend $\sigma$ to a permutation $p=\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{\ell}\right) \mapsto\left(\sigma\left(a_{1}\right), \ldots, \sigma\left(a_{\ell}\right)\right)$ on $B$.
(2) ShiftRows: A permutation $\pi \in S_{\ell}$ induces a block permutation on $B$ defined by $p \mapsto\left(a_{\pi(1)}, \ldots, a_{\pi(\ell)}\right)$.
(3) MixColumns: Choose an element $h \in F[x]$ of degree $m \mid \ell$ and an invertible element $c$ in the residue class ring $^{2} R:=F[x] /\langle h\rangle$. Then $c \in R^{*}$ induces a permutation $c: F^{m} \rightarrow F^{m}, p \mapsto c \cdot p$, where $p=\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right)$ is identified with the polynomial $a_{1} x^{m-1}+\cdots+a_{m-1} x+a_{m}$. Extend this permutation to a permutation on $B=F^{\ell}=\left(F^{m}\right)^{\frac{\ell}{m}}$ by $p=\left(p_{1}, \ldots, p_{\frac{\ell}{m}}\right) \mapsto\left(c \cdot p_{1}, \ldots, c \cdot p_{\frac{\ell}{m}}\right)$.
(4) AddRoundKey: In case $K=B$ then the addition of a key $e$ induces a permutation $p \mapsto p+e$ on $B=F^{\ell}$.
Note that (1) and (2) commute but (1) and (3) don't.
1.a. AES, the Advanced Encryption Standard.

Example 1.3 (AES). The United States Government's NIST ${ }^{3}$ announced on the 26th of November 2001, after a 5 -year standardization process, the symmetric cryptosystem published under the name Rijndael as the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES). This block cipher was developed by the two Belgian cryptographers Joan DaEmen and

[^28]Vincent Rijmen. The AES cryptosystem is now widely used. In the above example choose

- $n=8$ : The 256 elements in the field $F=\mathbb{F}_{2^{8}}=\mathbb{F}_{256}$ are considered as bytes $(=8$ bits) and represented by two hexadecimal digits $00,01, \ldots, 0 \mathrm{~F}, 10, \ldots, \mathrm{FF}$. As customary we write 0x in front of hexadecimal numbers. So 0x63 is the hexadecimal representation of the decimal number 99. Its binary representation is 01100011.
- $\ell:=16: B=F^{16} \cong_{\mathbb{F}_{2}} \mathbb{F}_{2}^{128}$ which has more elements than atoms in the universe.
- $f:=f_{\mathrm{AES}}:=x^{8}+x^{4}+x^{3}+x+1: 0 \times 63$ corresponds the field element $\bar{x}^{6}+\bar{x}^{5}+\bar{x}+1 \in$ $F$.
- $t:=0 \times 63 \in F$ corresponding to the vector

$$
t:=\left(\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
1 \\
0 \\
0 \\
0 \\
1 \\
1 \\
0
\end{array}\right) \text { and choose } g:=\left(\begin{array}{cccccccc}
1 & . & . & . & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & . & . & . & 1 & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 1 & . & . & . & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & . & . & . & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & . & . & . \\
. & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & . & . \\
. & . & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & . \\
. & . & . & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1
\end{array}\right) \in \operatorname{GL}_{8}\left(\mathbb{F}_{2}\right)
$$

For the lookup table of the permutation $F \rightarrow F, a \mapsto g a^{-1}+t$ see Figure 1.

Figure 1. Lookup table for the Rijndael S-box

- $\pi$ to be the permutation inducing the following row-shifts

$$
p:=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
a_{1} & a_{5} & a_{9} & \boxed{a_{13}} \\
a_{2} & a_{6} & a_{10} & \boxed{a_{14}} \\
a_{3} & a_{7} & a_{11} & \boxed{a_{15}} \\
a_{4} & a_{8} & a_{12} & \boxed{a_{16}}
\end{array}\right) \mapsto\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
a_{1} & a_{5} & a_{9} & \boxed{a_{13}} \\
a_{6} & a_{10} & \boxed{a_{14}} & a_{2} \\
a_{11} & \boxed{a_{15}} & a_{3} & a_{7} \\
\boxed{a_{16}} & a_{4} & a_{8} & a_{12}
\end{array}\right) \in B=F^{16} \equiv F^{4 \times 4} .
$$

- $m=4, h:=x^{4}+1=(x+1)^{4} \in F[x]$, and $c=0 \times 03 \cdot x^{3}+x^{2}+x+0 \times 02 \in R^{*}$.

This corresponds to the matrix ${ }^{4}$ multiplication

$$
\begin{aligned}
& p:=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
a_{1} & a_{5} & a_{9} & a_{13} \\
a_{2} & a_{6} & a_{10} & a_{14} \\
a_{3} & a_{7} & a_{11} & a_{15} \\
a_{4} & a_{8} & a_{12} & a_{16}
\end{array}\right) \mapsto \underbrace{\left(\begin{array}{llll}
02 & 03 & 01 & 01 \\
01 & 02 & 03 & 01 \\
01 & 01 & 02 & 03 \\
03 & 01 & 01 & 02
\end{array}\right)}_{\in F^{4 \times 4}} \cdot p \in F^{4 \times 4} \equiv F^{16}=: B \\
- & K \in\{\underbrace{B=F^{16}}_{128 \text {-bit keys }}, \underbrace{F^{24}}_{192 \text {-bit keys }}, \underbrace{F^{32}}_{256 \text {-bit keys }}\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The ciphering algorithm $\mathcal{E}_{e}$ is composed out of $N+1$ rounds, where $N=10,12,14$ depending on $K=F^{16}, F^{24}, F^{32}$. The Rijndael key schedule $K \rightarrow\left(F^{16}\right)^{N+1}$, $e \mapsto\left(k_{0}, \ldots, k_{N}\right)$ produces the $N+1$ round $\operatorname{keys}^{5}$ [Wik10h]. For details see [Wik10a] and the homepage of the course [Bar10].

Begin
Lect. 15

REmark 1.4. The iteration of the two steps ShiftRows and MixColumns produce what Shannon called the diffusion:
Changing a bit in $p$ would change each bit in $c=\mathcal{E}_{e}(p)$ with probability $\frac{1}{2}$.

## 1.b. Block cipher modes of operation.

Example 1.5. Let $(A, \ell, K, \mathcal{E})$ be a block cipher, and $B:=A^{\ell}$. We now list several ways to construct a symmetric cryptosystem $(P, C, K, \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{D})$ with $P=C=B^{\bullet}$. So for a (secret) key $e \in K$ define $\mathcal{E}_{e}\left(p_{1} p_{2} \ldots\right)=c_{1} c_{2} \ldots$ by setting
(1) $c_{i}:=\mathcal{E}_{e}\left(p_{i}\right)(E C B$ mode $=$ electronic codebook mode).

Assuming that $(A,+)$ is a group and $B$ the $\ell$-fold direct product group and that $c_{-1} \in B$ is an arbitrary (public) initial value:
(2) $c_{i}:=\mathcal{E}_{e}\left(p_{i}+c_{i-1}\right)$ for $i \geq 0(\mathbf{C B C}$ mode $=$ cipher-block chaining $)$.
(3) $c_{i}:=p_{i}+\mathcal{E}_{e}\left(c_{i-1}\right)$ for $i \geq 0$ (CFB mode $=$ cipher feedback).
(4) $c_{i}:=p_{i}+s_{i}, s_{i}:=\mathcal{E}_{e}\left(s_{i-1}\right)$ for $i \geq 0$ (OFB mode $=$ output feedback).

For diagrams see [Wik10d].

[^29]EXAMPLE 1.6. Let $(A, \ell, K, \mathcal{E})$ be a block cipher with $A=\mathbb{F}_{2}^{n}$ and $B:=A^{\ell}=\mathbb{F}_{2}^{k}$, where $k=n \ell$. The encryption algorithm $\mathcal{E}_{e}: B \rightarrow B$ can be used to construct a PRBG $G:\{0,1\}^{k} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\bullet}$ with fixes seed length $k$ according to

$$
G(s)=\mathcal{E}_{e}(s) \mathcal{E}_{e}^{2}(s) \ldots
$$

Compare this with the reversed situation in Example 5.13.

## CHAPTER 5

## Candidates of One-Way Functions

## 1. Complexity classes

Definition 1.1. A problem $\Pi$ lies in the complexity class

- $\mathbf{P}$ if $\Pi$ is deterministically solvable in polynomial time.
- BPP if $\Pi$ is probabilistically solvable in polynomial time.
- BQP if $\Pi$ is solvable by a quantum computer in polynomial time.
- NP if a solution of $\Pi$ can deterministically verified in polynomial time.
- NPC if any other problem in NP can be reduced to $\Pi$ in polynomial time.
- EXP if $\Pi$ deterministically solvable in exponential time.

BPP stands for "bounded-error probabilistic polynomial runtime" and BQP for "bounded-error quantum polynomial runtime".

Remark 1.2. It is known that

- $\mathrm{P} \subset \mathrm{BPP} \subset \mathrm{NP} \subset$ EXP.
- $\mathrm{P} \subsetneq \operatorname{EXP}$ (e.g., evaluation of a chess move).
- the traveling salesman problem lies in NPC.
- the factorization of natural numbers (FACTORING problem) and the discrete logarithm problem (DLP) (see below) lie in NP $\cap$ BQP.
It is conjectured ${ }^{1}$ that
- $\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{BPP}$.
- BPP $\neq \mathrm{NP}$, in particular NPC $\cap \mathrm{BPP}=\emptyset$.
- FACTORING and DL do not lie in BPP.
- $\mathrm{BQP} \neq \mathrm{NP}$, in particular $\mathrm{NPC} \cap \mathrm{BQP}=\emptyset$.

It would be optimal for cryptography if there is a $\Pi \in N P \backslash B Q P$.
Definition 1.3. Let $G=\langle g\rangle$ be a finite cyclic group. For each $y \in G$, there is exactly one minimal $a \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ with $g^{a}=y$. We call $a$ the discrete logarithm of $y$ with basis $g$. Computing $a=" \log _{g} y "$ (given $a$ and $y$ ) is called the discrete logarithm problem (DLP)

REMARK 1.4. In modern cryptography (2010) we make the following two standard assumptions:
(1) DL assumption: DLP $\notin$ BPP, i.e., the computation of discrete logarithm in the group $C_{p-1} \cong \mathbb{F}_{p}^{*}$ is not in BPP.

[^30](2) FACTORING assumption: The factorization of natural numbers does not lie in BPP.

We can prove the existence of cryptographically useful one-way functions only under such assumptions.

Example 1.5. For each prime $p$ choose a fixed primitive element $a \in \mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z}$. Assuming DL, the function

$$
f:\{1, \ldots, p-1\} \rightarrow\{1, \ldots, p-1\}, x \mapsto a^{x} \bmod p
$$

is a OWF with hardcore predicate

$$
b(x)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } x<\frac{p}{2} \\ 0 & \text { if } x \geq \frac{p}{2}\end{cases}
$$

## 2. Squaring modulo $n$

Consider the squaring homomorphism

$$
q_{n}:(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \rightarrow(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}, x \mapsto x^{2}
$$

Remark 2.1. If $n=p$ is a prime then

- $\operatorname{ker}\left(q_{n}\right)=\{ \pm 1\}$.
- If $p>2$ then there are exactly $\frac{p-1}{2}$ squares in $(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}$.

If $n=p q$, a product of two distinct odd primes $p, q$. Then

- $\operatorname{ker}\left(q_{n}\right)$ consists of four elements.
- There exists exactly $\frac{\varphi(n)}{4}$ squares in $(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$.

Example 2.2. Consider the following values of $n$ :

- $n=3$ :

$$
\begin{array}{c|ll}
a & 1 & 2 \\
\hline a^{2} & 1 & 1
\end{array}
$$

- $n=5$ :

$$
\begin{array}{c|cccc}
a & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
\hline a^{2} & 1 & 4 & 4 & 1
\end{array}
$$

- $n=15$ :

$$
\begin{array}{c|cccccccc}
a & 1 & 2 & 4 & 7 & 8 & 11 & 13 & 14 \\
\hline a^{2} & 1 & 4 & 1 & 4 & 4 & 1 & 4 & 1
\end{array}
$$

Now we want to study classical methods to identify squares and compute square roots.

## 2.a. Quadratic residues.

Definition 2.3. For $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $p$ prime define the Legendre symbol

$$
\left(\frac{a}{p}\right):=\left\{\begin{aligned}
1 & \text { if } \quad a \equiv b^{2} \bmod p \\
0 & \text { if } p \mid a \\
-1 & \text { otherwise }
\end{aligned}\right.
$$

THEOREM 2.4 (EULER). Let $p>2$ be an odd prime. Then $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \equiv a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \bmod p$
Proof. The case $p \mid a$ is clear. So assume $p \nmid a$. The group $\mathbb{F}_{p}^{*}=(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ is cyclic of order $p-1$ so $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \bmod p$. Hence $a^{\frac{p-1}{2}}$ is a root of $x^{2}-1 \in \mathbb{F}_{p}[x]$ and the group homomorphism

$$
h:(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*} \rightarrow\{ \pm 1\} \leq(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}, a \mapsto a^{\frac{p-1}{2}}
$$

is surjective. The kernel of $h$ thus consists of $\frac{p-1}{2}$ elements and contains $\left((\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}\right)^{2}$, so it coincides with $\left((\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}\right)^{2}$.

EULER's theorem can be used to simplify the computation of the LEGENDRE symbol. For example

Corollary 2.5.

$$
\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right)=(-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}=\left\{\begin{aligned}
1 & \text { if } p \equiv 1 \bmod 4 \\
-1 & \text { if } p \equiv 3 \bmod 4
\end{aligned}\right.
$$

Exercise 2.6. The map

$$
\left(\frac{\cdot}{p}\right):(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*} \rightarrow\{ \pm 1\}
$$

is a group homomorphism.
Definition 2.7. The elements in the kernel of $(\dot{\dot{p}})$ are called quadratic residues modulo $p$.

DEFINITION 2.8 (JACOBI symbol). Let $n=p_{1}^{a_{1}} \cdots p_{r}^{a_{r}}>1$ be the decomposition of the natural number $n$ as powers of distinct primes. For $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ set

$$
\left(\frac{a}{n}\right):=\left(\frac{a}{p_{1}}\right)^{a_{1}} \cdots\left(\frac{a}{p_{r}}\right)^{a_{r}} \in\{-1,0,1\}
$$

and for $n=1$ set $\left(\frac{a}{1}\right):=1$.
The Jacobi symbol can be computed without knowing an explicit factorization of $n$ (cf. EZT Vorlesung).

Corollary 2.9. $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)=-1$ implies that $a$ is not a square modulo $n$.
DEFINITION 2.10. If $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)=1$ and $a$ is not a square modulo $n$, then we call $a$ a pseudosquare modulo $n$.

Example 2.11. Consider the following values of $n$ :

- $n=3$ :

| $a$ | 1 | 2 |
| :---: | ---: | ---: |
| $a^{2}$ | 1 | 1 |
| $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$ | 1 | -1 |

- $n=5$ :

| $a$ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| $a^{2}$ | 1 | 4 | 4 | 1 |
| $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$ | 1 | -1 | -1 | 1 |

- $n=15$ :

| $a$ | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 8 | 11 | 13 | 14 |
| :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| $a^{2}$ | 1 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 1 |
| $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$ | 1 | 1 | 1 | -1 | 1 | -1 | -1 | -1 |

So 2 and 8 are pseudo-squares modulo 15 .

## Definition 2.12. Define the set of

- squares modulo $n$ :

$$
Q_{n}:=\left\{a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \mid \exists b \in \mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}: a=b^{2}\right\}=\left((\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}\right)^{2}
$$

- non-squares modulo $n$ :

$$
\bar{Q}_{n}:=\left\{a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \mid \nexists b \in \mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}: a=b^{2}\right\}=(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \backslash\left((\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}\right)^{2}
$$

- pseudo-squares modulo $n$ :

$$
\widetilde{Q}_{n}:=\left\{a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \left\lvert\,\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)=1\right.\right\} \backslash Q_{n} \subset \bar{Q}_{n}
$$

Begin
Lect. 16

Proposition 2.13. Let $p$ be a prime with $p \equiv 3 \bmod 4$. Then $a \in Q_{p}$ has exactly one square root in $Q_{p}$. We call it the principal root of $a$.

Proof. $\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z} \cong \mathbb{F}_{p}$ is a field, hence there are exactly two roots $\pm b$. By Corollary 2.5 and Exercise 2.6 we compute $\left(\frac{-b}{p}\right)=\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right)\left(\frac{b}{p}\right)=-\left(\frac{b}{p}\right)$. W.l.o.g. $\left(\frac{b}{p}\right)=1$ and $\left(\frac{-b}{p}\right)=$ -1 , so $b \in Q_{p}$ and $-b \in \bar{Q}_{p}$.

## Example 2.14.

- $Q_{5}=\{1,4\}$. The square roots of 4 are $2,3 \in \bar{Q}_{5}$. The square roots of 1 are $1,4 \in Q_{5}$.
- $Q_{7}=\{1,2,4\}$. The square roots of 2 are $3 \in \bar{Q}_{7}$ and $4 \in Q_{7}$. The square roots of 4 are $2 \in Q_{7}$ and $5 \in \bar{Q}_{7}$.

Definition 2.15. An $n \in \mathbb{N}$ is called a Blum number if $n=p_{1} p_{2}$ with $p_{i}$ distinct primes and $p_{i} \equiv 3 \bmod 4$.

Remark 2.16. The following holds for a BLum number $n$ :
(1) Each $a \in Q_{n}$ has exactly one square root in $Q_{n}$ (again called the principal root of $a$ ), one in $\widetilde{Q}_{n}$, and two in $\bar{Q}_{n} \backslash \widetilde{Q}_{n}$.
(2) $-1 \in \widetilde{Q}_{n}$.

Proof. (1) follows from Proposition 2.13 and the chinese remainder theorem. Details are left as an exercise. (2) follows from Corollary 2.5.

## 2.b. Square roots.

Definition 2.17. We list the following three fundamental problems:
FACTORING Given an $n \in \mathbb{N}$ compute a prime factor.
SQROOT Given an $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and a square $a \in Q_{n}$ compute a square root of $a$ modulo $n$.

|  | compute a square root of $a$ modulo $n$. |
| :--- | :--- |
| QRP | Given an $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)=1$ <br> decide whether $a$ is a square or a pseudo-square. |

Theorem 2.18. SQROOT for $n=p$ prime lies in BPP.
Proof. Let $n=p>2$ a prime number and $a \in(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}$. The idea is to exploit that

$$
\begin{equation*}
a^{m}=1 \text { for } m \text { odd implies that }\left(a^{\frac{m+1}{2}}\right)^{2}=a^{m+1}=a . \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Recall that

$$
a \in Q_{p} \Longleftrightarrow a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1 \bmod p
$$

by Euler's Theorem 2.4. So let $a$ be a square.
Case 1: $\frac{p-1}{2}$ is odd, i.e., $p \equiv 3 \bmod 4$ :
Using (3) with $m=\frac{p-1}{2}$ yields the square root $a^{\frac{m+1}{2}}=a^{\frac{p+1}{4}}$ of $a$.
Case 2: $\frac{p-1}{2}$ is even, i.e., $p \equiv 1 \bmod 4$ :

$$
a \in Q_{p} \Longleftrightarrow a^{\frac{p-1}{2}}=1 \Longleftrightarrow a^{\frac{p-1}{4}}= \pm 1
$$

We now prove by induction that we can use the equation $a^{m}= \pm 1$ for $m \left\lvert\, \frac{p-1}{4}\right.$ to compute a square root of $a$. We start with $m=\frac{p-1}{4}$.
Case a): $a^{m}=1$ and $m$ even: Proceed with the equation $a^{\frac{m}{2}}= \pm 1$.
Case b): $a^{m}=1$ and $m$ odd: (3) yields a square root $a^{\frac{m+1}{2}}$ of $a$.
Case c): $a^{m}=-1$. Choose an arbitrary $b \in \bar{Q}_{p}$ and set $b^{\prime}:=b^{\frac{p-1}{4 m}}$. Proceed with the equation

$$
\left(a b^{\prime 2}\right)^{m}=a^{m} b^{\frac{p-1}{2}}=(-1)^{2}=1 .
$$

Finally note that if $c$ is a square root of $a b^{\prime 2}$ then $a=\left(c b^{\prime-1}\right)^{2}$. This describes the probabilistic polynomial algorithm of Tonelli-Shanks [Wik11f]. We omit the details.

EXAMPLE 2.19. Let $p=41$. We know that $a=-2 \in Q_{41}$ since $(-2)^{21}=-\left(2^{7}\right)^{3}=$ $-5^{3}=-2$ so $(-2)^{20}=1$. Now we want to use the above algorithm to compute a square root of $a$. Note that $\frac{p-1}{2}=20$ is even and $\frac{p-1}{4}=10$. Find an element $b \in \bar{Q}_{41}$ by randomly checking (probability of failure is $\frac{1}{2}$ ):

- $2^{20}=(-1)^{20} \cdot(-2)^{20}=1(\times)$.
- $3^{20}=\left(3^{4}\right)^{5}=(81)^{5}=(-1)^{5}=-1(\sqrt{ })$.

So choose $b=3$ :

| $a$ | $m$ | $a^{m}$ | $\frac{p-1}{4 m}$ | $b^{\prime}=b^{\frac{p-1}{4 m}}$ | $\frac{m+1}{2}$ | $b^{\prime-1}$ | $\sqrt{a}$ |
| :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| -2 | 10 | -1 | 1 | $3^{1}=3$ |  | 14 | $33 \cdot 14=11$ |
| 23 | 10 | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 23 | 5 | -1 | 2 | $3^{2}=9$ |  | 32 | $10 \cdot 32=33$ |
| $23 \cdot 3^{2}=-23=18$ | 5 | 1 |  |  | 3 |  | $18^{3}=10$ |

LEMMA 2.20. Let $n=p_{1} p_{2}$ be a BLUM number ( $p_{i} \equiv 3 \bmod 4$ will not be relevant). Any $x \in \operatorname{ker} q_{n}$ with $x \neq \pm 1$ yields a factorization of $n$.

Proof. Let $x \in\left\{m \in \mathbb{N} \mid 1<m<n-1\right.$ and $\left.m^{2} \equiv 1 \bmod n\right\}$. Then $p_{1} p_{2}=n \mid$ $x^{2}-1=(x-1)(x+1)$. Since $n \nmid x \pm 1$ we conclude w.l.o.g. that $p_{1} \mid x-1$ and $p_{2} \mid x+1$. Now $p_{1}$ can be effectively computed as $p_{1}=\operatorname{gcd}(x-1, n)$.

THEOREM 2.21. If SQROOT for BLum numbers lies in BPP then FACTORING for Blum numbers lies in BPP.

Proof. From a probabilistic polynomial algorithm $A$ that solves SQROOT for BLum numbers we construct the following probabilistic polynomial algorithm that solves FACTORING:
Choose an arbitrarily element $c \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ and compute $a:=A\left(c^{2}\right)$. So $\frac{c}{a}$ is an element in $\operatorname{ker} q_{n}$ which is with probability $\frac{1}{2}$ different from $\pm 1$. The rest is Lemma 2.20
2.c. One-way functions. We sharpen our

FACTORING assumption: FACTORING of BLum numbers does not lie in BPP.
We also need the following
QR assumption: QRP for BLUM numbers does not lie in BPP.
Theorem 2.22. Let $n$ be a BLUM number. Then $f:=q_{n \mid Q_{n}}: Q_{n} \rightarrow Q_{n}$ is a permutation.
(1) $f$ is a one-way permutation under the FACTORING assumption (with security parameter: $\left.k:=\left\lceil\lg \left|Q_{n}\right|\right\rceil=\left\lceil\lg \frac{\varphi(n)}{4}\right\rceil=\lceil\lg \varphi(n)\rceil-2\right)$.
(2) The so-called parity (bit)
par : $(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \mapsto\{0,1\}, a \mapsto($ smallest nonnegative representative of $a) \bmod 2$
defines under the $Q R$ assumption a hardcore bit of $f$.

Proof. $f$ is a permutation by Remark 2.16.(1). (1) follows from Theorem 2.21. To prove (2) let $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)=1$, i.e., $a \in Q_{n} \dot{\cup} \widetilde{Q}_{n}$. For the principal root $w \in Q_{n}$ of $a^{2}$ we claim:

$$
\begin{equation*}
w=a \Longleftrightarrow \operatorname{par}(w)=\operatorname{par}(a) \tag{par}
\end{equation*}
$$

The forward implication of the claim is trivial. We now prove the backward implication: Since $-1 \in \widetilde{Q}_{n}$ by Remark 2.16.(2) and $w \in Q_{n}$ we deduce that $-w \in \widetilde{Q}_{n}$ (i.e., that $\widetilde{Q}_{n}=$ $\left.-Q_{n}\right)$. So $a=w$ or $a=-w$. In other words: $a \neq w \Longrightarrow a=-w \Longrightarrow \operatorname{par}(w) \neq \operatorname{par}(a)$ (remember, $n$ is odd). From an algorithm $B$ for which $B(x)$ with $x=f(a)=a^{2}$ predicts $\operatorname{par}(a)$ we obtain an algorithm for QRP by returning:

$$
\begin{cases}a \text { is a square } & \text { if } B\left(a^{2}\right)=\operatorname{par}(a), \\ a \text { is a pseudo-square } & \text { if } B\left(a^{2}\right) \neq \operatorname{par}(a) .\end{cases}
$$

Definition 2.23. The function $f$ is called the Rabin function. The PRBG $G$ constructed according to Theorem 5.10 is called the BLUM-BLUM-Shub generator (see [Wik10e]): For a BLUM number $n$ and a seed $s \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ define $G(s)=x_{0} x_{1} x_{2} \ldots$ with $x_{i}=\operatorname{par}\left(s^{2^{i}}\right) . G$ is then a CSPRBG under the QR assumption for BLUM numbers.
2.d. Trapdoors. A OWP $f:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\bullet}$ can be viewed as a family of permutations $f_{k}:\{0,1\}^{k} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{k}$.

To define a OWP with a trapdoor ${ }^{2}$ we need the following ingredients:

- $I$, an infinite index set,
- $|\cdot|: I \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, a length function.
- $I_{k}:=\{i \in I:|i| \leq k\}$ (we call $k$ the security parameter).
- $X_{i}$ for all $i \in I$, a family of finite sets.
- $f=\left(f_{i}\right)_{i \in I}: \bigcup_{i \in I} X_{i} \rightarrow \bigcup_{i \in I} X_{i}$, a family of permutations $f_{i}: X_{i} \rightarrow X_{i}$.
- $t_{i}$ for all $i \in I$, trapdoor information (see the examples below).
- $\mathcal{E}$, a polynomial algorithm with $\mathcal{E}(i, x)=\mathcal{E}_{i}(x)=f_{i}(x)$ for all $i \in I$ and $x \in X_{i}$.
- $\mathcal{D}$, a polynomial algorithm with $\mathcal{D}\left(i, t_{i}, f_{i}(x)\right)=\mathcal{D}_{\left(i, t_{i}\right)}\left(f_{i}(x)\right)=x$ for all $i \in I$ and $x \in X_{i}$.
- $S_{k}:=\left\{(i, x) \mid i \in I_{k}, x \in X_{i}\right\}$, the possible inputs of $\mathcal{E}$ with security parameter $k$.

For a probabilistic algorithm $A: \bigcup_{i \in I} X_{i} \rightarrow \bigcup_{i \in I} X_{i}$ with output $A(i, y) \in X_{i}$ for all $i \in I$ and $y \in X_{i}$ define the probabilistic algorithm $A_{f}$ by setting

$$
A_{f}(i, x)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } A\left(i, f_{i}(x)\right)=x \\ 0 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

for all $i \in I$ and $x \in X_{i}$.
As usual, let $U_{S_{k}}$ denote the uniformly distributed random variable on $S_{k}$ (i.e., first choose a random $i \in I$ and then a random $x \in X_{i}$ ). Then $\mu_{A_{f} \circ U_{S_{k}}}(1)$ is the probability of $A$ correctly computing the preimage $x$ of $y=f_{i}(x)$.

[^31]Definition 2.24. The permutation $f=\left(f_{i}\right)_{i \in I}: \bigcup_{i \in I} X_{i} \rightarrow \bigcup_{i \in I} X_{i}$ is called a oneway permutation with trapdoor $t=\left(t_{i}\right)_{i \in I}$ if $k \mapsto \mu_{A_{f} \circ U_{S_{k}}}(1)$ is negligible for all polynomial algorithms $A$ as above (cf. Definition 5.7.(1)).

Example 2.25 (Rabin function). Set $I:=\{$ Blum numbers $\},|n|=k=\lfloor\lg n\rfloor, X_{n}=$ $Q_{n}, f_{n}=q_{n \mid Q_{n}}: x \mapsto x^{2} \bmod n, t_{n}$ the factorization of $n$, and $\mathcal{D}$ is the combination of the algorithm in the proof of Theorem 2.18 with the chinese remainder theorem. We obtain a one way permutation with trapdoor under the FACTORING assumption, which is equivalent to the "SQROOT $\notin \mathrm{BPP}$ " assumption for BLUM numbers ${ }^{3}$. The parity bit $b:=$ par is a hardcore bit under the QR assumption (by Theorem 2.22.(2)).

EXERCISE 2.26. The knowledge of sufficiently many preimages of $f_{n}$ leads to a polynomial runtime algorithm to determine $t_{n}$, i.e., to factor $n$.
2.e. The BLum-Goldwasser construction. Given a OWP with trapdoor and hardcore bit $b$ BLUM and GOLDWASSER constructed the following asymmetric probabilistic ${ }^{4}$ cryptosystem $(P, C, \kappa, \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{D})$ with

- $P=C=\{0,1\}^{\bullet}$,
- $K=I, K^{\prime}=\left\{\left(i, t_{i}\right) \mid i \in I\right\}, \kappa: K^{\prime} \rightarrow K,\left(i, t_{i}\right) \mapsto i$,
- $\mathcal{E}_{e}: P \rightsquigarrow C, \mathcal{D}_{d}: C \rightarrow P$ as follows (compare with Example 5.13):

Let $e \in K$ and $p \in\{0,1\}^{\ell}$. Choose an arbitrary seed $s \in X_{e}$ and compute the sequence

$$
r=b(s) b\left(f_{e}(s)\right) \ldots b\left(f_{e}^{\ell-1}(s)\right)
$$

together with $f_{e}^{\ell}(s) \in X_{e}$. Define

$$
\mathcal{E}_{e}(p)=f_{e}^{\ell}(s) \cdot(p+r),
$$

where, as customary, + is the bitwise addition and $\cdot$ the concatenation ${ }^{5}$ of bits. Let now $d=\left(e, t_{e}\right) \in K^{\prime}$ and $c=s^{\prime} \cdot c^{\prime}$ with $c^{\prime} \in\{0,1\}^{\ell}$. Use $s^{\prime}=f_{e}^{\ell}(s)$ and the trapdoor information $t_{e}$ to recursively compute $f_{e}^{\ell-1}(s), \ldots, f_{e}(s), s$. Now compute $r=b(s) b\left(f_{e}(s)\right) \ldots b\left(f_{e}^{\ell-1}(s)\right)$ and return $\mathcal{D}_{d}(c)=c^{\prime}+r$.

Definition 2.27. The Blum-Goldwasser construction applied to the Rabin function is called the BLum-Goldwasser cryptosystem.

Theorem 2.28. The BLum-Goldwasser cryptosystem is an asymmetric probabilistic cryptosystem where
(1) the FACTORING assumption implies $\boldsymbol{A S Y M M E T R Y} \boldsymbol{Y}^{6}$ (i.e., the secret key cannot be computed in polynomial time using the public key), and

[^32](2) the $Q R$ assumption implies $C P A-I N D^{7}$.

Proof. (1) By definition, computing $d=\left(n, t_{n}\right)$ means factoring the BLUM number $n$.
(2) Let $p_{1}, p_{2} \in\{0,1\}^{\ell}$ and $c_{i}=\mathcal{E}_{e}\left(p_{i}\right)$. The QR assumption, Theorem 2.22.(2), and Theorem 5.10 imply that the construction of $r$ defines a CSPRBG. Hence an attacker cannot distinguish between $p_{1}+r_{1}$ and $p_{2}+r_{2}$ (even if $f_{e}^{\ell}(s)$ is known, exercise).

[^33]
## CHAPTER 6

## Public Cryptosystems

## 1. RSA

Remark 1.1. Let $n, e \in N$ with $\operatorname{gcd}(e, \varphi(n))=1$. Then

$$
f_{e}:(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \rightarrow(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}, a \mapsto a^{e}
$$

is a permutation with inverse $f_{d}$, where $d e \equiv 1 \bmod \varphi(n)$.
Proof. By definition $\varphi(n)=\left|(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}\right|$. The extended Euclidian division algorithm yields the BÉzout identity $d e+\lambda \varphi(n)=1$. Since $a^{\varphi(n)}=1$ by LAGRANGE's theorem we conclude that

$$
a=a^{1}=a^{d e+\lambda \varphi(n)}=\left(a^{e}\right)^{d}
$$

For an $n$ of the form $n=p q$ with $p$ and $q$ distinct primes it follows that $\varphi(n)=$ $(p-1)(q-1)$.

Example 1.2 (RSA function). Define

- $I:=\{(n=p q, e) \mid p, q$ are distinct primes and $\operatorname{gcd}(e,(p-1)(q-1))=1\}$.

For $i=(n=p q, e) \in I$ define

- $|i|=k:=\lfloor\lg n\rfloor$.
- $X_{i}=(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$.
- $f_{i}: a \mapsto a^{e} \bmod n$.
- $t_{i}=d$ with $d e \equiv 1 \bmod (p-1)(q-1)$.
- $\mathcal{D}\left(i, t_{i}, y\right)=\mathcal{D}_{\left(i, t_{i}\right)}(y)=y^{d} \bmod n$.

Definition 1.3. The RSA problem (RSAP) is the problem of inverting the RSA function. The RSA assumption is that RSAP $\notin$ BPP.

Remark 1.4.

- The RSAP reduces to FACTORING, i.e., the RSA assumption is stronger than the FACTORING assumption.
- Under the RSA assumption: The RSA function is a OWP with trapdoor and hardcore bit $b=$ par (without proof). The BLum-GOLDWASSER construction yields, as for the Rabin function, a probabilistic asymmetric cryptosystem satisfying IND-CPA.

Definition 1.5. The RSA cryptosystem is defined as follows:

- $P=\{0,1\}^{k}, C=\{0,1\}^{k+1}$ (e.g., $k=1024$ ).
- $K=I$ as above.
- $K^{\prime}=$
$\left\{(n=p q, d, e) \mid p, q\right.$ distinct primes, $\left.|p|,|q| \approx \frac{k}{2},|p q| \geq k, d e \equiv 1 \bmod \varphi(n)\right\}$.
- $\kappa:(n, d, e) \mapsto(n, e) \in K$.
- $\mathcal{E}_{(n, e)}(x)=x^{e} \bmod n$.
- $\mathcal{D}_{(n, d, e)}(y)=y^{d} \bmod n$.

REmark 1.6. We now list the security properties of the RSA cryptosystem (assuming a CPA attack, which is natural for public cryptosystems):

- $p, q$ and $\varphi(n)$ must remain secret.
- RSA assumption $\Longrightarrow \mathrm{OW} \Longrightarrow$ ASYMMETRY.
- IND is not satisfied since the cryptosystem is deterministic.
- NM is not satisfied since the cryptosystem is multiplicative: $(a b)^{e}=a^{e} b^{e}$ (see below).

EXAmple 1.7. Let $p=11, q=23$, and $e=3$. Then $n=p q=253, k=\lfloor\lg n\rfloor=7$, $\varphi(n)=(p-1)(q-1)=10 \cdot 23=220$, and $d=147$ with $e d=441 \equiv 1 \bmod 220$. For $p=0110100=(52)_{10}$ we compute $c=\mathcal{E}_{e}(p)=52^{3}=193 \bmod 253=(1100001)_{2}$. $\mathcal{D}_{(253,147,3)}(c)=193^{147} \equiv 52 \bmod 253=p$.
Violating the NM: To shift $p$ one position to the left we manipulate $c$ to $c^{\prime}=\mathcal{E}_{e}(2) \cdot c=$ $2^{3} \cdot 193=26 \bmod 253$. Then $\mathcal{D}_{(253,147,3)}(c)=26^{147} \equiv 104 \bmod 253=(1101000)_{2}$.

Begin
Lect. 18

In analogy with the trivial statement of Theorem 2.28.(1) for the BLUm-Goldwasser cryptosystem we prove:

ThEOREM 1.8. The FACTORING assumption implies the ASYMMETRY of the RSA cryptosystem, i.e., the secret key d cannot be computed in polynomial time using the public key $(n, e)$.

Proof. Assume, a CPA adversary ${ }^{1}$ can compute the secret key $d$. We need to show that he can then factor $n$ using the knowledge of $(n, d, e) \in K^{\prime}$ :
The chinese remainder theorem provides an isomorphism

$$
(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \rightarrow(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*} \times(\mathbb{Z} / q \mathbb{Z})^{*}, a \bmod n \mapsto(a \bmod p, a \bmod q)
$$

In particular $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}}(a)=\operatorname{lcm}\left(\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}}(a), \operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} / q \mathbb{Z})^{*}}(a)\right)$. The idea is to use the following trivial equivalence

$$
c \equiv 1 \bmod p, c \not \equiv 1 \bmod q \Longleftrightarrow p \mid c-1, q \nmid c-1 \Longleftrightarrow(c-1, n)=p
$$

to factor $n$. So our goal is to construct such an element $c$.
For any $a$ we have that $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}}(a)\left|p-1, \operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} / q \mathbb{Z})^{*}}(a)\right| q-1$, and $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}}(a) \mid$ $(p-1)(q-1)=\varphi(n) \mid e d-1$. Write $e d-1=2^{s} t$ with $t$ odd. Then $\left(a^{t}\right)^{2^{s}}=1$, hence $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}}\left(a^{t}\right) \mid 2^{s}$. Choose randomly an element $b \in\left((\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}\right)^{t}$, for instance $b=a^{t}$ with $a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ randomly chosen. Then $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}}(b)=2^{i}$ and $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} / q \mathbb{Z})^{*}}(b)=2^{j}$ with $i, j \leq s$.

[^34]If $i \neq j$, or w.l.o.g. $i<j$, then $c:=b^{2^{i}} \equiv 1 \bmod p$ and $c \not \equiv 1 \bmod q$ and we get the factorization $p=(c-1, n)$.
We now prove that $i \neq j$ for (at least) half of all $a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ (recall, $\left.b:=a^{t}\right)$. Recall that the choice of a primitive element $g \in(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ yields an isomorphism $(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+) \rightarrow$ $(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}, x \mapsto g^{x}$. As above, $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(1)=p-1 \mid 2^{s} t$ and $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(t)=2^{s}$. Using the identification $(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \cong(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*} \times(\mathbb{Z} / q \mathbb{Z})^{*} \cong(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+) \times(\mathbb{Z} /(q-1) \mathbb{Z},+)$ it is equivalent to show that the inequality $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(x t) \neq \operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(q-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(y t)$ holds for (at least) half of all pairs $(x, y) \in(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+) \times(\mathbb{Z} /(q-1) \mathbb{Z},+)$.
Proof of the inequality: Let $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(t)=2^{k}$ and $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(q-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(t)=2^{\ell}$. Note that $\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(t)=\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(x t)$ for all $x$ odd (trivial). Now we distinguish to cases:
$k \neq \ell$ : Again, w.l.o.g. let $\ell<k$. Then for all $(x, y)$ with $x$ odd we obtain:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(q-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(y t) \leq \operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(q-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(t)=2^{\ell}<2^{k}=\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(t) \operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+)}(x t) . \\
& k=\ell: \text { This case is left as an exercise. }
\end{aligned}
$$

EXAmple 1.9 (Example 1.7 continued). As above let $n=253=11 \cdot 23, e=3, d=147$, $e d-1=220=2^{2} \cdot 55$. So $s=2$ and $t=55$. Try $a=2: b=a^{t}=2^{55} \equiv 208 \bmod 253$. Compute $\left(b^{2^{i}}-1, n\right)$ for $i=0,1<s=2:(208-1,253)=23$.

Summing up, we get the following implications of security assumptions ${ }^{2}$ for the RSA cryptosystem (under a CPA attack):


## 2. Elgamal

Recall: Let $p$ be a prime and $g$ be a generator of $(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}$. The problem of inverting $\exp _{g}:(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*} \rightarrow(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}, x \mapsto g^{x}$ is the discrete logarithm problem (DLP). $\exp _{g}$ is a $\mathrm{OWP}^{3}$ under the DL assumption. We don't have candidates for a trapdoor.

Definition 2.1. Let $p$ be a prime number and $(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}=\langle g\rangle$.

- The problem of computing $g^{\alpha \beta}$ given $g^{\alpha}$ and $g^{\beta}$ is called Diffie-Hellman problem (DHP)
- The Diffie-Hellman or DH assumption is that DHP $\notin \mathrm{BPP}$.

Remark 2.2. The DHP reduces to the DLP, i.e., the DH assumption is stronger than the DL assumption. The equivalence is unknown.

Definition 2.3. The Elgamal cryptosystem is defined by

$$
P=\{0,1\}^{k} \text { and } C=\{0,1\}^{2(k+1)}
$$

[^35]- $K^{\prime}=\left\{(p, g, a) \mid p\right.$ prime, $\left.\langle g\rangle=(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}, 2^{k}<p<2^{k+1}, a \in\{0, \ldots, p-2\}\right\}$.
- $\kappa:(p, g, a) \mapsto\left(p, g, g^{a}\right) \in K$.

We encode $\{0,1\}^{k} \subset(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*} \subset\{0,1\}^{k+1}$. So we "replace" $P$ by $(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ and $C$ by $(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*} \times(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}$. For $e=\left(p, g, A=g^{a}\right)$ and $d=(p, g, a)$ we define

- $\mathcal{E}_{e}(x):=\left(g^{b}, A^{b} x\right)$, where $b \in\{0, \ldots, p-2\}$ is chosen randomly.
- $\mathcal{D}_{d}(y, z):=y^{-a} z$.

Of course, $a$ has to be kept secret.
Proof of correctness. $\left(g^{b}\right)^{-a} A^{b} x=g^{-b a+a b} x=x$.
Example 2.4. Take $p=23$ and $g=7$. For $a=6$, i.e., $d=(23,7,6)$ compute $A=7^{6} \equiv 4 \bmod 23$. $e=\kappa(d)=(23,7,4)$. For $x=7 \in(\mathbb{Z} / 23 \mathbb{Z})^{*}=P$ compute $\mathcal{E}_{e}(x)$ for different $b$ 's:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& b=3: \mathcal{E}_{e}(x)=\left(7^{3}, 4^{3} \cdot 7\right)=(21,11) \in(\mathbb{Z} / 23 \mathbb{Z})^{*} \times(\mathbb{Z} / 23 \mathbb{Z})^{*}=C . \\
& b=2: \mathcal{E}_{e}(x)=\left(7^{2}, 4^{2} \cdot 7\right)=(3,20) \in(\mathbb{Z} / 23 \mathbb{Z})^{*} \times(\mathbb{Z} / 23 \mathbb{Z})^{*}=C .
\end{aligned}
$$

Now verify $\mathcal{D}_{d}(21,11)=21^{-6} \cdot 11 \equiv 7 \bmod 23 \equiv 3^{-6} \cdot 20=\mathcal{D}_{d}(3,20)$.
Remark 2.5. The Elgamal cryptosystem is a probabilistic public key cryptosystem with multi-valued $\mathcal{E}$. It

- satisfies the IND-CPA security model under the DL assumption (without proof).
- does not satisfy NM because of its multiplicativity (like RSA, cf. Remark 1.6).

Theorem 2.6. Under a CPA attack the (probabilistic public key) Elgamal cryptosystem satisfies
(1) OW under the DH assumption.
(2) ASYMMETRY under the DL assumption.

Proof. (1) Assume the adversary can decrypt ciphertexts, i.e., from the public key information $g^{a}$ and the ciphertext $\left(g^{b}, g^{a b} x\right)$ he can computer $x$. Then he can in particular decrypt $\left(g^{b}, 1\right)$ to obtain $g^{-a b}$ and hence $g^{a b}$.
(2) If a CPA adversary (i.e., who has full access to $A=g^{a}$ and $\mathcal{E}_{e}$ ) can compute the secret key information $a$, then he has already solved the DLP.

## 3. The Rabin cryptosystem

Definition 3.1. The Rabin cryptosystem is defined as follows:

- $P=\{0,1\}^{k}$ and $C=\{0,1\}^{k+1}$.
- $K^{\prime}=\left\{(p, q) \mid p, q\right.$ distinct primes, $\left.p, q \equiv 3 \bmod 4,2^{k}<p q<2^{k+1}\right\}$.
- $\kappa:(p, q) \mapsto p q \in K=\left\{n \in \mathbb{N} \mid 2^{k}<n<2^{k+1}\right.$ a BLUM number $\}$.

We encode $\{0,1\}^{k} \subset(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \subset\{0,1\}^{k+1}$. So we "replace" $P$ and $C$ by $(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$. For $e=n$ and $d=(p, q)$ we define

- $\mathcal{E}_{e}(x):=x^{2} \bmod n($ not injective!)
- $\mathcal{D}_{d}(y):=$ the four square roots of $x^{2} \bmod n$ (not uniquely determined!) using the chinese remainder theorem and the simple case " $p \equiv 3 \bmod 4$ " in the proof of Theorem 2.18.

Example 3.2. Take $p=3$ and $q=7$. Then $n=21$ is the public key of the Rabin cryptosystem. To encrypt the plain text $10 \in(\mathbb{Z} / 21 \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ we compute

$$
c=10^{2}=16 \bmod 21
$$

To decrypt $c=16$ using the secret prime factors $p=3$ and $q=7$ we compute the four square roots of 16 modulo 21: We have

$$
16^{\frac{p+1}{4}}=16 \equiv 1 \bmod 3 \quad \text { and } 16^{\frac{q+1}{4}}=16^{2} \equiv 4 \bmod 7
$$

Hence

- 1 and $-1 \equiv 2 \bmod 3$ are the square roots of 16 modulo 3 .
- 4 and $-4 \equiv 3 \bmod 7$ are the square roots of 16 module 7 .

With the chinese remainder theorem we get the four combinations

$$
(1,4), \quad(1,3), \quad(2,4), \quad(2,3)
$$

and finally the four square roots

$$
4, \quad 10, \quad 11, \quad 17
$$

among which we search for the (hopefully unique) human readable "plain text" 10 .
Theorem 3.3. For the Rabin cryptosystem the following implications of assumptions hold (under a CPA attack)

$$
\text { FACTORING } \Longrightarrow O W \Longrightarrow A S Y M M E T R Y
$$

Proof. If an attacker can decrypt ciphertexts he can choose random elements $x \in$ $(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ and compute square roots of $x^{2}$. By Theorem 2.21 he obtains a factorization of $n$, a total break. This proves the first implication. The second implication is trivial.

Remark 3.4. Restricting $P$ to $Q_{n}$ does not eliminate the non-uniqueness issue: How to find an injective encoding $\{0,1\}^{k} \rightarrow Q_{n}$ ?.

## 4. Security models

REmARK 4.1. We know that the following security models are not fulfilled:

- The Blum-Goldwasser does not satisfy the security model IND-CCA2 (exercise).
- The same reasoning as in the proof of Theorem 3.3 shows that the RABIN cryptosystem does not fulfill the security model ASYMMETRY-CCA2.

We have the following hierarchy of assumptions


REmARK 4.2. It is conjectured that all backward implications in the above diagram hold ${ }^{4}$. These conjectures would imply that the RSA, Elgamal, and Blum-Goldwasser cryptosystems do not fulfill the security model ASYMMETRY-CCA2:

- RSA $=$ FACTORING $\Longrightarrow$ RSA $\notin$ ASYMMETRY-CCA2.
- $\mathrm{DH}=\mathrm{DL} \Longrightarrow$ Elgamal $\notin$ ASYMMETRY-CCA2.
- $\mathrm{QR}=\mathrm{SQROOT} \Longrightarrow$ BLUM-GOLDWASSER $\notin$ ASYMMETRY-CCA2 (exercise).
4.a. IND-CCA2. One can modify the BLum-Goldwasser cryptosystem in such a way, that it fulfills IND-CCA2. For this we need the concept of a one-way hash function, which is, roughly speaking, a one-way function $H:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{k}$ for some $k \in \mathbb{N}$.

Remark 4.3. The modified Blum-Goldwasser cryptosystem (cf. Definition 2.27)

$$
\mathcal{E}_{e}(p)=f_{e}^{\ell}(s+H(y)) \cdot \underbrace{(p+r)}_{y}
$$

now satisfies, under the QR assumption, the security model IND-CCA2.
4.b. OAEP. We now describe the so-called optimal asymmetric encryption padding $^{5}$ (OAEP) [Wik11d] which is often used to improve the security of public key cryptosystems by preprocessing plaintexts prior to the asymmetric encryption:

- Fix a security parameter $k \in \mathbb{N}$.
- Fix $k_{0}, k_{1} \in \mathbb{N}$ with $\ell:=k-k_{0}-k_{1}>0$.
- Fix a CSPRBG

$$
G:\{0,1\}^{k_{0}} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\ell+k_{1}}
$$

- Fix a one-way hash function

$$
H:\{0,1\}^{\ell+k_{1}} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{k_{0}}
$$

called the compression function.

[^36]For an $n$-bit plaintext $p$ and seed $s \in\{0,1\}^{k_{0}}$ return the $k$-bit concatenated string

$$
p^{\prime}=\underbrace{((p \cdot \underbrace{0 \ldots 0}_{k_{1}})+G(s))}_{=: y \in\{0,1\}^{n+k_{1}}} \cdot(s+H(y)) .
$$

Now one can apply the OWP $f:\{0,1\}^{k} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{k}$ of public key cryptosystem to the padded message $p^{\prime}$.

Definition 4.4. The probabilistic public key cryptosystem obtained by applying the RSA function to an OAEP-preprocessed message $p^{\prime}$ is called the RSA-OAEP cryptosystem.

Assuming the existence of a so-called ideal compression function $H$ one can prove that
THEOREM 4.5 (2001). The RSA-OAEP cryptosystem satisfies the security model INDCCA2 under the RSA assumption.

## CHAPTER 7

## Primality tests

In this chapter we want to study various sorts of probabilistic and deterministic primality test. Let us denote by $\mathbb{P} \subset \mathbb{N}$ the set of prime numbers.

## 1. Probabilistic primality tests

1.a. Fermat test. Recall that for $p \in \mathbb{P}$ Fermat's little theorem $^{1}$ states that $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \bmod p$ for all $a \in \mathbb{Z} \backslash p \mathbb{Z}$. This yields the so-called Fermat test, an elementary probabilistic test for primality, which lies in $O\left(\log ^{3} n\right)$ :
If for a natural number $n$ we succeed to find an $a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ with $a^{n-1} \not \equiv 1 \bmod n$ then $n$ is not a prime. Note that finding an $a \in N_{n}:=((\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}) \backslash\{0\}) \backslash(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ is hopeless if $n$ is the product of huge primes (compare $n=|\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}|$ and $n-\varphi(n)=\left|N_{n}\right|+1$ ).

Example 1.1. Let $n=341$. For
$a=2: 2^{340} \equiv 1 \bmod 341$.
$a=3: 3^{340} \equiv 56 \bmod 341$.
Hence, 341 is a composite number and 3 is a witness.
Definition 1.2. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$.
(1) $n$ is called a pseudoprime with Fermat nonwitness $a$ if

$$
a^{n-1} \equiv 1 \bmod n
$$

i.e., the Fermat test of the primality of $n$ passes for $a$.
(2) If $n$ is a pseudoprime with Fermat nonwitness $a$ but not prime then $a$ is called a Fermat liar.
(3) If the Fermat test of the primality of $n$ fails for $a$, i.e., if

$$
a^{n-1} \not \equiv 1 \bmod n,
$$

then $a$ is called a Fermat witness (for the compositeness) of $n$.
(4) $n$ is called a CARMICHAEL number if $n$ is a composite number without a Fermat witness, i.e., if all $a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ are Fermat liars.

Of course, each prime is a pseudoprime for all $a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$. In 1994 it was proven that the set of CARMICHAEL numbers is infinite:

$$
561=3 \cdot 11 \cdot 17, \quad 1105=5 \cdot 13 \cdot 17, \quad 1729=7 \cdot 13 \cdot 19, \quad \ldots
$$

[^37]Lemma 1.3. Let $n$ be a Carmichael number and $p \in \mathbb{P}$. Then
(1) $n$ is odd.
(2) $n$ is square free.
(3) $p|n \Longrightarrow p-1| n-1$.
(4) $n$ has at least 3 prime factors.

Proof. (1) $n$ even $\Longrightarrow n-1$ odd $\underset{\text { Carmichael }}{\stackrel{n}{\Longrightarrow}}-1=(-1)^{n-1}=1 \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ $\Longrightarrow n=2$ prime $z$ (since 2 as a prime is not CARMICHAEL).
(2) Write $n=p^{e} \cdot n^{\prime}$, where $e$ is the maximal $p$-power. Then $\varphi(n)=\varphi\left(p^{e}\right) \varphi\left(n^{\prime}\right)=$ $p^{e-1}(p-1) \varphi\left(n^{\prime}\right) . p^{2} \mid n$ implies:

- $p\left|\varphi(n)=\left|(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}\right| \Longrightarrow \exists a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}\right.$ with $^{\operatorname{ord}_{(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}}}(a)=p$.
- $p \mid n \Longrightarrow p \nmid n-1 \stackrel{\operatorname{ord}(a)=p}{\Longrightarrow} a^{n-1} \not \equiv 1 \bmod n \Longrightarrow a$ is a FERMAT witness for $n \Longrightarrow n$ not Carmichael.
(3) Let $p$ be a prime divisor of $n$. Since $a^{n-1}=1$ in $(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ it follows that $a^{n-1}=1$ in the factor $\operatorname{group}(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}$, for all $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $(a, n)=1$. Since $(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ is cyclic we deduce that $p-1=\left|(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}\right| \mid n-1$ (choose $a$ to be a primitive element, i.e., a generator of $\left.(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}\right)$.
(4) Exercise.

The existence of infinitely many CARMIChaEl numbers means that we cannot trust the Fermat primality test (unless of course it produces a Fermat witness).
1.b. Miller-Rabin test. The Miller-Rabin test makes use of the fact that the equation $a^{2}=1$ has exactly two solutions $a= \pm 1$ over $\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$ if $n$ is a prime (since then $\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$ is a field).

Lemma 1.4 (Miller-Rabin). Let $a \in(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}$. Write $p-1=2^{s} t$ with $t$ odd $(s \geq 0)$. Then

$$
\begin{array}{rlrl}
a^{t} & \equiv \pm 1 \bmod p & \text { or } \\
a^{2^{r} t} & \equiv-1 \bmod p \quad \text { for an } 0<r<s
\end{array}
$$

Proof. Let $0 \leq s_{0} \leq s$ minimal with $a^{2^{s} 0 t}=1$ (recall $a^{p-1}=1$ ). We distinguish two cases:
$s_{0}=0: a^{t}=1$.
$s_{0}>0: a^{2^{r} t}=-1$ with $r=s_{0}-1 \in\{0, \ldots, s-1\}$.

DEFINITION 1.5. Let $n$ be a composite number. Write $n-1=2^{s} t$ with $t$ odd (so $s \geq 0) . a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ is called a Miller-Rabin nonwitness if

$$
\begin{align*}
a^{t} & \equiv \pm 1 \bmod n \quad \underline{\text { or }} \\
a^{2^{r} t} & \equiv-1 \bmod n \quad \text { for } \underline{\text { an }} 0<r<s, \tag{-1}
\end{align*}
$$

otherwise a Miller-Rabin witness (for the compositeness of $n$ ).

Example 1.6. Consider $n=561: n-1=560=2^{4} \cdot 35$, so $s=4$ and $t=35$. For $a=2$ we compute

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
2^{35} \equiv 263 \bmod 561 \\
2^{2 \cdot 35} \equiv 166 \bmod 561 \\
2^{4 \cdot 35} \equiv 67 \bmod 561 \\
2^{8 \cdot 35} \equiv 1 \text { ㅂ } 561
\end{array}\right\} \quad \not \equiv 1,-1 \bmod 561
$$

So $a=2$ is a Miller-Rabin witness for Carmichael number 561 .
REmark 1.7. If the generalized Riemann hypothesis holds, then $p$ is a prime if one of the conditions $( \pm 1)$ or $(-1)$ is fulfilled for each $1<a<2 \log ^{2} n$. This turns the probabilistic Miller-Rabin test into a deterministic one. See Remark 1.12 below.

Definition 1.8. For a fixed $n \in \mathbb{N}$ define

$$
N:=\{\text { Miller-RABIN nonwitness for } n\} \subset(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} .
$$

The idea is to find a subgroup $U \leq(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ with $N \subset U$ and to bound the index $(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}: U$ from below away from 1. A natural candidate would be

$$
U_{0}:=\left\{a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \mid a^{n-1}=1\right\}=\{\text { FERMAT nonwitness }\}=\operatorname{ker}\left(x \mapsto x^{n-1}\right) \leq(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} .
$$

But we know that the index $(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}: U_{0}$ might be 1 :

$$
U_{0}=(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \Longleftrightarrow n \text { is a prime or a CARMICHAEL number. }
$$

Lemma 1.9. Let $n=p^{\alpha}$ for $\alpha \geq 2$. Then $(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}: U_{0} \geq p$.
Proof. $p\left|p^{\alpha-1}(p-1)=\varphi(n)=\left|(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}\right|\right.$. Then there exists an $a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ with $\operatorname{ord}(a)=p$. On the other hand $p \mid n \Longrightarrow p \nmid n-1 \Longrightarrow a^{n-1} \not \equiv 1 \bmod n \Longrightarrow a \notin U_{0}$. The same holds for $a^{2}, \ldots, a^{p-1}$. Hence $U_{0}, a U_{0}, a^{2} U_{0}, \ldots, a^{p-1} U_{0} \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} / U_{0}$ are pairwise different and $(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}: U_{0} \geq p$.

Theorem 1.10. Let $n$ be a composite odd number with $2,3 \nmid n$. Then $|N| \leq \frac{\varphi(n)}{4}<\frac{n}{4}$.
Proof. Again write $n-1=2^{s} t$ with $t$ odd (so $s \geq 1$ ). Set $N_{-1}:=\left\{a \in N \mid a^{t} \equiv\right.$ $1 \bmod n\}$ and $N_{i}:=\left\{a \in N \mid a^{2^{i} t} \equiv-1 \bmod n\right\}$ for $0 \leq i<s$. Then $N=\bigcup_{i=-1}^{s-1} N_{i}$ with $-1 \in N_{0} \neq \emptyset$. Set $r:=\max \left\{i \mid N_{i} \neq \emptyset\right\} \in\{0, \ldots, s-1\}$ and $m:=2^{r} t$. In particular, $m \left\lvert\, \frac{n-1}{2}\right.$ (because $r<s$ ). For all $a \in N$

$$
a^{m} \equiv\left\{\begin{array}{rll}
-1 & \text { if } & a \in N_{r}  \tag{4}\\
1 & \text { if } & a \in N_{i}, i<r
\end{array}\right.
$$

Consider the group endomorphism $f:(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \rightarrow(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}, a \mapsto a^{m}$. Let $n=p_{1}^{\alpha_{1}} \cdots p_{u}^{\alpha_{u}}$ be the factorization of $n$ as the product of prime powers. The chinese remainder theorem yields the isomorphism

$$
(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \cong\left(\mathbb{Z} / p^{\alpha_{1}} \mathbb{Z}\right)^{*} \times \cdots \times\left(\mathbb{Z} / p^{\alpha_{u}} \mathbb{Z}\right)^{*}
$$

identifying $a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}$ with the $u$-tuple $\left(a \bmod p^{\alpha_{1}}, \ldots, a \bmod p^{\alpha_{u}}\right)$. We make use this isomorphism to define the chain of subgroups

$$
\begin{aligned}
& (\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \\
& \text { VI } \\
& U_{0} \quad:=\operatorname{ker}\left(x \mapsto x^{n-1}\right) \quad=\left\{a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \mid a^{n-1} \equiv 1 \bmod n\right\}, \\
& \begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{V} \mid \\
U_{1}
\end{array} \quad:=f^{-1}(\{( \pm 1, \ldots, \pm 1)\})=\left\{a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \mid a^{m} \equiv \pm 1 \bmod p_{i}^{\alpha_{i}}, 1 \leq i \leq u\right\} \\
& \text { VI } \\
& U_{2}:=f^{-1}(\{ \pm 1\}) \quad=\left\{a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \mid a^{m} \equiv \pm 1 \bmod n\right\}, \\
& \stackrel{\mathrm{VI}}{U_{3}} \quad:=f^{-1}(\{1\}) \quad=\left\{a \in(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} \mid a^{m} \equiv 1 \bmod n\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

$U_{1}$ is a subgroup of $U_{0}$ since $m \left\lvert\, \frac{n-1}{2}\right.$ (see above). The remaining inclusions are obvious as the preimages of inclusions of a chain of subgroups. Since $N \subset U_{2}$ we want to bound the index $(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}: U_{2}$ from below away from 1 . We claim that

$$
(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}: U_{2} \geq 4
$$

To this end we prove that the subgroup $\{( \pm 1, \ldots, \pm 1)\} \leq \operatorname{im} f$ :
Choose a $b \in N_{r} \neq \emptyset$, then $f(b)=b^{m} \equiv-1 \bmod n$, hence, $b^{m} \equiv-1 \bmod p_{i}^{\alpha_{i}}$ for all $i=1, \ldots, u$. Now let $y$ be an arbitrary element of the elementary AbELian subgroup ${ }^{2}$ $\{( \pm 1, \ldots, \pm 1)\} \cong\left(\mathbb{F}_{2}^{u},+\right)$, w.l.o.g. we can assume that $y=(1, \ldots, 1,-1, \ldots,-1)$. Then $x:=(1, \ldots, 1, b, \ldots, b)$ is a preimage of $y$ under $f$, i.e., $f(x)=y$. Summing up:

$$
U_{3} \underbrace{\underbrace{<}_{2} U_{2} \underbrace{\leq}_{2^{u-1}}}_{2^{u}} U_{1} \leq U_{0} \leq(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}
$$

We now distinguish three cases:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& u \geq 3: U_{2} \underbrace{\ll}_{\geq 4} U_{1} \leq U_{0} \leq(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*} . \\
& u=2: U_{2} \underbrace{\underbrace{<4}_{2} U_{1} \leq U_{0} \underbrace{\ll}_{\geq 2}}_{\geq 2}(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}, \text { by Lemma 1.3.(4). } \\
& u=1: U_{2} \underbrace{=}_{1} U_{1} \leq U_{0} \underbrace{\ll}_{\geq p \geq 5}(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})^{*}, \text { by Lemma } 1.9 \text { and the assumptions on } n .
\end{aligned}
$$

This finishes the proof.
The proof provides a probabilistic primality test in $O\left(\log ^{3} n\right)$. If the Miller-Rabin test passes for $i$ randomly chosen different $a$ 's then the probability of $n$ being prime is greater than $1-\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{i}$.

Example 1.11. Now we demonstrate the difference between the Fermat test and the Miller-Rabin test on a trival example. Let $n:=185$ :

[^38]| $a$ | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ \in N_{-1} \end{gathered}$ | $\left\lvert\, \begin{gathered} -1 \\ \in N_{0} \end{gathered}\right.$ | $\stackrel{43}{ } \quad N_{1}=N_{r}$ | $N_{2}=\emptyset$ | 36 | 6 | 2 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $a^{t}$ | 1 | -1 | $\not \equiv \pm 1$ |  | $\not \equiv \pm 1$ | $\not \equiv \pm 1$ | $\not \equiv \pm 1$ |
| $a^{2 t}$ | 1 | 1 | -1 |  | 1 | $\not \equiv-1$ | $\not \equiv 1$ |
| $a^{4 t}$ | 1 | 1 | 1 |  | 1 | 1 | $\not \equiv 1$ |
|  | Miller-Rabin nonwitnesses |  |  |  | Miller-Rabin witnesses |  |  |
| $a^{8 t}$ | 1 | 1 | 1 |  | 1 | 1 | $\not \equiv 1$ |
|  | Fermat nonwitnesses |  |  |  |  |  | Fermat witnesses |

Remark 1.12. One can prove that an

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
n<2047 & \text { is prime } \Longleftrightarrow( \pm 1) \text { or }(-1) \text { is fulfilled for } a=2 . \\
n<1373653 & \text { is prime } \Longleftrightarrow( \pm 1) \text { or }(-1) \text { is fulfilled } \forall a \in\{2,3\} \\
\vdots & \\
n<\underbrace{341550071728321}_{>3 \cdot 4 \cdot 10^{14}} & \text { is prime } \Longleftrightarrow( \pm 1) \text { or }(-1) \text { is fulfilled } \forall a \in\{2, \ldots, 17\},
\end{array}
$$

$$
\text { i.e., for all of the first } 7 \text { primes. }
$$

For such $n$ 's the probabilistic Miller-Rabin test becomes a deterministic one.

Begin
Lect. 21

## 2. Deterministic primality tests

2.a. The AKS-algorithm. In this subsection we sketch the AKS-test, which was proposed by Agrawal and his master students Kayal and Saxena in $2002^{3}$ as the first deterministic polynomial runtime primality test.

Lemma 2.1. Let $n \in \mathbb{N} \backslash\{1\}$ and $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ coprime to $n$. Then ${ }^{4}$

$$
n \text { is prime } \Longleftrightarrow(x+a)^{n}=x^{n}+a \bmod n .
$$

Proof. $\Longrightarrow$ : Let $n \in \mathbb{P}$. The $n \left\lvert\,\binom{ n}{i}\right.$ for all $0<i<n$. Further, $a^{n} \equiv a \bmod n$ (recall, $n$ is prime). Then $(x+a)^{n}=\sum_{i=0}^{n}\binom{n}{i} a^{i} x^{n-i} \equiv x^{n}+a^{n} \equiv x^{n}+a \bmod n$.
$\Longleftarrow:$ Let $(x+a)^{n}=\sum_{i=0}^{n}\binom{n}{i} a^{i} x^{n-i} \equiv x^{n}+a \bmod n\left(^{*}\right)$. Let $p$ be a prime divisor of $n$. Then $\binom{n}{p}:=\frac{n(n-1) \cdots(n-p+1)}{p(p-1) \cdots 1}$ is not divisible by $n$, since $p \mid n$ and $p \nmid(n-1), \ldots,(n-p+1)$. Together with $(a, n)=1$ this implies that $\binom{n}{p} a^{p} \not \equiv 0 \bmod n$. Hence $n=p$ by $\left(^{*}\right)$.

The idea is to consider the equation

$$
(x+a)^{n} \equiv x^{n}+a \bmod \left(n, x^{r}-1\right),
$$

for a fixed $r$, i.e., reduce the coefficients modulo $n$ and the polynomial modulo $x^{r}-1$.
We state without proof:

[^39]ThEOREM 2.2 (AKS-criterion). Let $2<n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $r \in \mathbb{N}$ coprime to $n$. Further let $1<s \in \mathbb{N}$ with $(a, n)=1$ for all $a=1, \ldots, s$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\binom{\varphi(r)+s-1}{s}>n^{2 d\left\lfloor\sqrt{\frac{\varphi(r)}{d}}\right\rfloor} \text { for all } d \left\lvert\, \frac{\varphi(r)}{t}\right. \tag{AKS}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $t:=\left|\langle n\rangle_{(\mathbb{Z} / r \mathbb{Z})^{*}}\right|$. If

$$
(x+a)^{n} \equiv x^{n}+a \bmod \left(n, x^{r}-1\right), \quad \text { for all } a=1, \ldots, s,
$$

then $n$ is a prime power.
To justify an early step in the AKS algorithm below we need a simple corollary of the following Lemma which we also state without proof:

Lemma $2.3\left(\right.$ Chebyshev $\left.^{5}\right)$. For $k \geq 2$

$$
\prod_{\substack{p \in \mathbb{P} \\ p \leq 2 k}} p>2^{k}
$$

Corollary 2.4. Let $N \geq 2$ be a natural number of bit length $k:=\lceil\lg N\rceil$. Then there exists a prime $p \leq 2 k$ with $p \nmid N$.

Proof. $N<2^{k}$, by definition of $k$. Now use the previous Lemma.
The following version of the AKS-algorithm is due to Lenstra and BERnstein.
Algorithm 2.5. Let $n \in \mathbb{N} \backslash\{1\}$ be an odd number.
(1) Compute (the factors of) $N:=2 n(n-1)\left(n^{2}-1\right) \cdots\left(n^{4\lceil\lg n\rceil^{2}}-1\right)$ of bit length $k:=\lceil\lg N\rceil$.
(2) Find the smallest prime $r \leq 2 k$ with $r \nmid N$. If, before reaching the smallest prime $r$, you discover that
(a) $n$ is a prime $(n<r)$ then return: $n$ prime.
(b) a prime $p \mid n(p<r)$ then return: $n$ composite.
(3) If there is an element $a \in\{1, \ldots, r\}$ with $(x+a)^{n} \not \equiv x^{n}+a \bmod \left(n, x^{r}-1\right)$ then return: $n$ composite.
(4) If there is an element $a \in\left\{1, \ldots, \log _{r} n\right\}$ with $\sqrt[a]{n} \in \mathbb{N}$ then return: $n$ composite.
(5) return: $n$ prime.

THEOREM 2.6. Algorithm 2.5 is correct and has polynomial runtime, i.e., it lies in $O(f(\ell))$, where $f$ is a polynomial in $\ell:=\lceil\lg n\rceil$.

Proof. (1) The factors $n-1, n^{2}-1, \ldots, n^{4\lceil\lg n\rceil^{2}}-1$ can be computed with less than $4 \ell^{2} \lg \left(4 \ell^{2}\right)$ multiplications. Further $\lg N \leq 1+\lg n+(\lg n) \sum_{i=1}^{4 \ell^{2}} i \leq 1+\ell+$ $\ell \frac{\left(4 \ell^{2}+1\right) 4 \ell^{2}}{2}$, in particular, the bit length $k:=\lceil\lg N\rceil$ is polynomial in $\ell$.
(2) The runtime of listing all primes $\leq 2 k$ is a polynomial in $\ell$. If case (a) or (b) occur then the algorithm terminates.

[^40](3) Claim (i): $t:=\left|\langle n\rangle_{(\mathbb{Z} / r \mathbb{Z})^{*}}\right|>4 \ell^{2}$. Proof: If not then there would exist an $i \in$ $\left\{1, \ldots, 4 \ell^{2}\right\}$ with $n^{i} \equiv 1 \bmod r \Longrightarrow r\left|n^{i}-1\right| N$ 亿.
Consider the AKS-criterion for $s=r$. The previous steps guarantee that $(a, n)=1$ for all $a=1, \ldots, r=s$ (recall, $r \nmid n$ since $n \mid N$ ).
Claim (ii): The (AKS) inequality is fulfilled. Proof: From $d \leq \frac{\varphi(r)}{t} \stackrel{\text { Claim (i) }}{<} \frac{\varphi(r)}{4 \ell^{2}}$ it follows that
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 d\left\lfloor\sqrt{\frac{\varphi(r)}{d}}\right\rfloor \leq 2 d \sqrt{\frac{\varphi(r)}{d}}=\sqrt{4 d \varphi(r)} \stackrel{\text { here }}{<} \frac{\varphi(r)}{\ell} \leq \frac{\varphi(r)}{\lg n} . \tag{}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

Further $2 \mid N \Longrightarrow r \geq 3 \Longrightarrow \varphi(r)=r-1 \geq 2 \Longrightarrow$

The AKS-criterion (Theorem 2.2) can now be applied proving the correctness of step (3). Note that exponentiating with $n$ is polynomial in $\ell$.
(4) If this step is reached then $n$ is a prime power by the AKS-criterion. That this step is also polynomial in $\ell$ is an easy exercise.

## CHAPTER 8

## Integer Factorization

Consult [Wik11e] for the current state of the RSA factorization challenge. Be aware that $n$ in RSA- $n$ refers to the number decimal digits if $n \leq 500$ or $n=617$, e.g., RSA-232, otherwise to the number of binary digits, e.g., RSA-768, which also has 232 decimal digits, and was successfully factored in December 12, 2009 [KAF $\left.{ }^{+} \mathbf{1 0}\right]$ :

The following effort was involved. We spent half a year on 80 processors on polynomial selection. This was about $3 \%$ of the main task, the sieving, which was done on many hundreds of machines and took almost two years.

There is no polynomial algorithm known up to date.

## 1. Pollard's $p-1$ method

Definition 1.1. Let $B \in \mathbb{N}$. An $n \in \mathbb{N}$ is called
(1) $B$-smooth if all its prime divisors are less than or equal to $B$.
(2) $B$-powersmooth if all its prime power divisors are less than or equal to $B$.

We now describe Pollard's $p-1 \operatorname{method}$ to factor an integer $n \in \mathbb{N}$ where $p$ is a prime divisor of $n$ :
If $(a, n)=1$ for an $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ then $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \bmod p$ (Fermat's little theorem). Assume $p-1$ is $B$-powersmooth for a "small" bound $B \in \mathbb{N}$. Then $p-1 \mid \operatorname{lcm}\{1, \ldots, B\}$ and hence $a^{\operatorname{lcm}\{1, \ldots, B\}} \equiv 1 \bmod p$, or equivalently $p \mid a^{\operatorname{lcm}\{1, \ldots, B\}}-1$. In particular:

$$
\left(a^{\operatorname{lcm}\{1, \ldots, B\}}-1, n\right)>1
$$

and we have found a divisor ${ }^{1}$ of $n$.
A good heuristic value for $B$ is $B \geq n^{\frac{1}{2}\left(1-\frac{1}{e}\right)} \approx n^{0.316}$. So for a fixed $B$ the method should be able to cover all $n \leq B^{2 \frac{e}{e-1}} \approx B^{3.164}$. Typically one chooses $B \approx 10^{6}$ which allows handling numbers $n \leq 10^{19}$.

EXERCISE 1.2. Describe a factorization algorithm using the above idea. Use your algorithm to factor 1633797455657959.

[^41]
## 2. Pollard's $\rho$ method

Let $n$ be a composite number and $x_{0}, x_{1}, \ldots$ be a sequence in $\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$. For a prime divisor $p$ of $n$ set $y_{k}:=x_{k} \bmod p$. Since $\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z}$ is finite two $y$ 's, say $y_{\mu}$ and $y_{\mu+\lambda}\left(\mu \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}\right.$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{N}$ ), will eventually coincide: $y_{\mu+\lambda}=y_{\mu} \in \mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z}$, or equivalently, $p \mid x_{\mu+\lambda}-x_{\mu}$. But then $d:=\left(x_{\mu+\lambda}-x_{\mu}, n\right)>1$ is factor of $n$. The trivial (improbable) case $d=n$ only occurs if already $x_{\mu+\lambda}=x_{\mu} \in \mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$.

If the sequence $x_{0}, x_{1}, \ldots \in \mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$ is chosen randomly then $y_{0}, y_{1}, \ldots$ will be a random sequence in $\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z}$, and the birthday problem [Wik11a] will imply that after approximately $\sqrt{p}$ random choices two $y$ 's, say $y_{\mu}$ and $y_{\mu+\lambda}$, will coincide with probability $\frac{1}{2}$.

To produce a pseudo-random sequence, Pollard suggested a recursion using a polynomial $f \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$. For an initial value $x_{0} \in \mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$ set $x_{k+1}:=f\left(x_{k}\right) \bmod n$. For $y_{k}:=x_{k} \bmod p$ still $y_{k+1} \equiv f\left(y_{k}\right) \bmod p$. One often uses the nonlinear polynomial $f:=x^{2}+c$ with $c \neq 0 \in \mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$, typically $c= \pm 1$.

Recall that any recursive sequence in a finite set eventually becomes periodic, giving this method its name $\rho$. There are several cycle-detection algorithms. The two most prominent ones are Floyd's tortoise ${ }^{2}$ and hare ${ }^{3}$ algorithm and BRENT's algorithm [Wik11b]. Their goal is to
(1) avoid too much comparisons.
(2) find the minimal $\mu$ and the period length $\lambda$.

Of course, only the first goal is relevant for us, where the comparison step in the cycledetection algorithm has to be replaced by the gcd computation: $\left(y_{\mu+\lambda}-y_{\mu}, n\right)$.

The following version of the Pollard's $\rho$ method is based on Floyd's algorithm:
Algorithm 2.1 (Pollard's $\rho$ method). Given a composite number $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the following algorithm returns a nontrivial factor of $n$ or fail.
(1) $x:=1, z:=1, d:=1$
(2) while $d=1$ do

- $x:=f(x)$
- $z:=f(f(z))$
- $d:=(z-x, n)$
- if $d=n$ then return fail
(3) return $d$


## 3. Fermat's method

Fermat's method for factoring a composite number $n$ tries to write it as the difference of two squares $n=x^{2}-y^{2}$, yielding the factorization $n=(x+y)(x-y)$. Indeed, for a composite odd number $n=a b$ such a representation always exists: Setting $x:=\frac{a+b}{2}$ and $y:=\frac{a-b}{2}$ we recover $a=x+y$ and $b=x-y$.

[^42]EXAMPLE 3.1. Let $n=7429$. $x=227$ and $y=210$ satisfy $x^{2}-y^{2}=n$ with $x-y=17$ and $x+y=437$. Hence $n=17 \cdot 437$.

## 4. DIXon's method

DIXON's method for factoring a composite odd number $n$ is a relaxation of Fermat's one. It is based on the following fact: If $x, y$ are integers with

$$
x^{2} \equiv y^{2} \bmod n \quad \text { and } x \not \equiv \pm y \bmod n
$$

then $(x-y, n)$ (and $(x+y, n))$ is a nontrivial divisor of $n$.
EXAMPLE 4.1. Let $n=84923$. Taking $x=20712$ and $y=16800$ we compute $x^{2}-y^{2}=$ $1728 \cdot n, x-y=3912$ (and $x+y=37512$ ). Hence $(x-y, n)=163$ and $n=163 \cdot 521$.

Algorithm 4.2 (DiXON's algorithm). Given a composite number $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the following algorithm returns a nontrivial factor of $n$ or fail.
(1) $F:=\left\{p_{1}, \ldots, p_{k}\right\} \subset \mathbb{P}$ be a set of $k$ distinct "small" primes, where $k$ is "small". We call $F$ a factor base ${ }^{4}$.
(2) Find $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m} \in \mathbb{N}(m>k)$ such that $x_{i}^{2}=p_{1}^{e_{1 i}} \cdots p_{k}^{e_{k i}} \bmod n$.
(3) Set $v_{i}:=\left(\left(e_{1 i}, \ldots, e_{k i}\right) \bmod 2\right) \in \mathbb{F}_{2}^{k}$ for $i=1, \ldots, m$. Solve the $\mathbb{F}_{2}$-linear system

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{m} \varepsilon_{i} v_{i}=0 \in \mathbb{F}_{2}^{k}
$$

(4) Set $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{k}\right):=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{m} \varepsilon_{i}\left(e_{1 i}, \ldots, e_{k i}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^{m}$. Define

$$
x:=\prod_{i=1}^{m} x_{i}^{\varepsilon_{i}} \quad \text { and } \quad y:=p_{1}^{a_{1}} \cdots p_{k}^{a_{k}}
$$

Then

$$
x^{2}=\prod_{i=1}^{m} x_{i}^{2 \varepsilon_{i}} \equiv \prod_{i=1}^{m}\left(p_{1}^{\varepsilon_{i} e_{1 i}} \cdots p_{k}^{\varepsilon_{i} e_{k i}}\right)=p_{1}^{\sum_{i=1}^{m} \varepsilon_{i} e_{1 i}} \cdots p_{k}^{\sum_{i=1}^{m} \varepsilon_{i} e_{k i}}=p_{1}^{2 a_{1}} \cdots p_{k}^{2 a_{k}}=y^{2} \bmod n
$$

(5) If $x \not \equiv y \bmod n$ then return $(x-y, n)$ else return fail.

Example 4.3. Again let $n=7429$. Take $F=\{2,3,5,7\}$.

$$
\begin{array}{rlr}
87^{2} & \equiv & 2^{2} \quad \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \bmod 7429 \\
88^{2} & \equiv & 3^{2} \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \bmod 7429
\end{array}
$$

So $v_{1}=v_{2}=(0,0,1,1) \in \mathbb{F}_{2}^{4}$ and $\varepsilon_{1}=\varepsilon_{2}=1$ since $v_{1}+v_{2} \in \mathbb{F}_{2}^{4}$. Hence $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{4}\right)=$ $(1,1,1,1) \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^{4}, x=87 \cdot 77 \equiv 227 \bmod n$ and $y=2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \equiv 210 \bmod n$. As we saw in Example 3.1 abेove $(x-y, n)=(17, n)=17$.

Exercise 4.4. Treat Example 4.1 using Dixon's algorithm.
Hint: Try $x_{1}:=513$ and $x_{2}:=537$.

[^43]
## 5. The quadratic sieve

The quadratic sieve (QS) ${ }^{5}$ of Pomerance is an optimization of DIXON's method. The goal is to find $x_{i}$ 's close to the square root $\sqrt{n}$ such that $x_{i}^{2}$ is $B$-smooth $\bmod n$ for a "small" bound $B \in \mathbb{N}$ (see Algorithm 4.2, step (2)).

As candidates for these smooth $x_{i}^{2}$ consider the quantities

$$
Q(a):=(\lfloor\sqrt{n}\rfloor+a)^{2}-n \in \mathbb{Z}
$$

for $a$ in some sieve interval $S:=\{-s, \ldots, s\} \subset \mathbb{Z}$ with width $s$.
As $Q(a)$ might be negative a slight modification of DIXON's method turns out to be useful:

ExERCISE 5.1. Describe a modified version of DIXON's method allowing the factor base $F$ to include -1 (the "sign").

By definition, $Q(a)$ is a square $\bmod n$, that is $Q(a) \equiv x^{2} \bmod n$ with $x=\lfloor\sqrt{n}\rfloor+a$. The key observation is the content of the following

Remark 5.2. Let $q \in \mathbb{N} \backslash\{1\}$ and $x, a \in \mathbb{Z}$.
(1) $x^{2} \equiv n \bmod q \Longleftrightarrow q \mid Q(a)$ for $a=x-\lfloor\sqrt{n}\rfloor$.
(2) $q|Q(a) \Longrightarrow q| Q(a+k q)$ for all $k \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Proof. (1) is trivial by the definition of $Q(a)$.
(2) More generally, $Q(x+k q) \equiv Q(x) \bmod q$ since computing $\bmod q$ is a ring homomorphism $\mathbb{Z}[x] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} / q \mathbb{Z}[x]$.

In words: $q$ is a divisor of $Q(a)$ for $a=x-\lfloor\sqrt{n}\rfloor$ iff the equation $x^{2} \equiv n \bmod q$ is solvable. And if $q$ is a divisor of $Q(a)$ the it is a divisor of $Q(a+k q)$ for all $k \in \mathbb{Z}$.

For the composite odd number $n$ define

$$
\mathbb{P}(n):=\left\{p \in \mathbb{P} \mid p=2 \text { or }\left(\frac{n}{p}\right)=1\right\} .
$$

This is the set of all primes for which the equation $x^{2} \equiv n \bmod p$ is solvable and ${ }^{6} p \nmid n$.
Algorithm 5.3. Fix a bound $B \in \mathbb{N}$ and a factor base $F \subset \mathbb{P}(n)$. For a sieve interval $S:=\{-s, \ldots, s\} \subset \mathbb{Z}$ the following algorithm returns the list of those $Q(a)$ with $a \in S$ which are $B$-powersmooth with prime factors in ${ }^{7} F$.
(1) Set $L_{a}:=Q(a)$ for all $a \in S$.
(2) For all $p \in F$ :
(a) Solve ${ }^{8}$ the equation $x^{2} \equiv n \bmod p$. (Hence, by Remark 5.2, $p \mid Q(a)$ for all $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $a \equiv x-\lfloor\sqrt{n}\rfloor \bmod p$.)

[^44](b) Sieve: For all $a \in S$ with $a \equiv \pm x-\lfloor\sqrt{n}\rfloor \bmod p$, where $x$ is a solution of the equation $x^{2} \equiv n \bmod p$ : Replace $L_{a}$ by the quotient $\frac{L_{a}}{p^{e}}$, where $p^{e}$ is the maximal power dividing $L_{a}$ which is $\leq B$.
(3) return the list of those $Q(a)$ with $a \in S$ for which $L_{a}=1$.

ExErcise 5.4. Let $n=4417$. Compare the needed sieve width $s$ for $F=\{-1,2,3,7\}$ and $F=\{-1,2,3,13\}$.

## CHAPTER 9

## Elliptic curves

## 1. The projective space

Begin
Lect. 23

Let $K$ be a field. The set

$$
\mathbb{A}^{n}(K)=K^{n}=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \mid x_{i} \in K\right\}
$$

is called the affine space of dimension $n$ over $K$. If $K$ is clear from the context then we will simply write $\mathbb{A}^{n}$ instead.

Two distinct points $P, Q \in \mathbb{A}^{n}(K)$ uniquely determine an (affine) line

$$
\overline{P Q}:=P+K \cdot(Q-P):=\{P+k(Q-P) \mid k \in K\} .
$$

containing both of them.
The projective space of dimension $n$ over $K$ is defined as the set

$$
\mathbb{P}^{n}(K):=\left(K^{n+1} \backslash\{0\}\right) / K^{*}:=\left\{K^{*} \cdot x \mid x \in K^{n+1} \backslash\{0\}\right\}
$$

Again we write $\mathbb{P}^{n}$ if the field $K$ is clear from the context.
A point $P$ in $\mathbb{P}^{n}(K)$ can thus be identified with a 1-dimensional subspace of $K^{n+1}$. More generally, define the trace of a subset $Z \subset \mathbb{P}^{n}(K)$ to be the subset

$$
Z^{*} \subset K^{n+1}=\left\{x \in K^{n+1} \backslash\{0\} \mid K^{*} \cdot x \in Z\right\} \cup\{0\}
$$

This gives a one-to-one correspondence between subsets of $\mathbb{P}^{n}(K)$ and those subsets of the underlying vector space $K^{n+1}$ which are unions of 1-dimensional subspaces.

Example 1.1. A (projective) line in $\mathbb{P}^{n}(K)$ is the set of all 1-dimensional subspaces of a 2-dimensional subspace $L \leq K^{n+1}$. We identify the projective line with its trace $L$. Two distinct points $P, Q \in \mathbb{P}^{n}(K)$ determine a unique projective line $\overline{P Q}:=P+Q$ passing through both of them. $P+Q$ is the 2-dimensional span of $P, Q$, both viewed as 1-dimensional subspaces of $K^{n+1}$.
1.a. Homogenous coordinates and affine charts. If $x=\left(x_{0}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in K^{n+1} \backslash\{0\}$ then for the point $P=K \cdot x$ we write

$$
P=\left(x_{0}: \ldots: x_{n}\right) .
$$

We call $x_{0}, \ldots, x_{n} \in K$ the homogeneous coordinates of $P$. They are uniquely determined by $P$ up to a common nonzero factor:
$\left(x_{0}: \ldots: x_{n}\right)=\left(y_{0}: \ldots: y_{n}\right) \Longleftrightarrow\left(y_{0}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)=k \cdot\left(x_{0}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ for some $k \in K^{*}$.
Example 1.2. Fix a field $K$.
(1) $\mathbb{A}^{1}=\{a \mid a \in K\}$ and $\mathbb{P}^{1}=\left\{(x: y) \mid(x, y) \in K^{2} \backslash\{0\}\right\}$. Identifying $\mathbb{A}^{1}$ with the affine subspaces $\{(1, y) \mid y \in K\} \subset K^{2}$ or $\{(x, 1) \mid x \in K\} \subset K^{2}$ defines two embeddings

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \varphi_{0}: \mathbb{A}^{1} \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^{1}, y \mapsto(1: y), \\
& \varphi_{1}: \mathbb{A}^{1} \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^{1}, x \mapsto(x: 1)
\end{aligned}
$$

Visualize the two "screens" and the "light rays" in $K^{2}=\mathbb{R}^{2}$ ! These embeddings are also called (standard) affine charts of $\mathbb{P}^{1}$.
The elements of the image $\varphi_{0}\left(\mathbb{A}^{1}\right) \subset \mathbb{P}^{1}\left(\right.$ resp. $\left.\varphi_{1}\left(\mathbb{A}^{1}\right) \subset \mathbb{P}^{1}\right)$ are called affine points w.r.t. the chart $\varphi_{0}$ (resp. $\varphi_{1}$ ). The point $(0: 1) \in \mathbb{P}^{1}$, corresponding to the $y$-axis in $K^{2}$, is the only non-affine point w.r.t. $\varphi_{0}$. It is called the point at infinity ${ }^{1}$ w.r.t. $\varphi_{0}$. Analogously for $(1: 0)$ and $\varphi_{1}$. Summing up:

$$
\mathbb{P}^{1}=\underbrace{\varphi_{0}\left(\mathbb{A}^{1}\right)}_{\text {affine points }} \dot{\cup}\{\underbrace{(0: 1)}_{\text {pt at } \infty}\}=\underbrace{\varphi_{1}\left(\mathbb{A}^{1}\right)}_{\text {affine points }} \dot{\cup}\{\underbrace{(1: 0)}_{\text {pt at } \infty}\} .
$$

The partial inverses are given by the "projections"

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \varphi_{0}^{-1}: \mathbb{P}^{1} \backslash\{(0: 1)\} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^{1},(x: y) \mapsto \frac{y}{x}, \\
& \varphi_{1}^{-1}: \mathbb{P}^{1} \backslash\{(1: 0)\} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^{1},(x: y) \mapsto \frac{x}{y} .
\end{aligned}
$$

(2) $\mathbb{A}^{2}=\{(a, b) \mid a, b \in K\}$ and $\mathbb{P}^{2}=\left\{(x: y: z) \mid(x, y, z) \in K^{3} \backslash\{0\}\right\}$. We have three standard charts

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \varphi_{0}: \mathbb{A}^{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^{2},(y, z) \mapsto(1: y: z), \\
& \varphi_{1}: \mathbb{A}^{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^{2},(x, z) \mapsto(x: 1: z), \\
& \varphi_{2}: \mathbb{A}^{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^{2},(x, y) \mapsto(x: y: 1) .
\end{aligned}
$$

We will usually identify $\mathbb{A}^{2}$ with its image under $\varphi_{2}$ and call its elements the affine points (w.r.t. $\varphi_{2}$ ). The complementary set

$$
U:=\mathbb{P}^{2} \backslash \varphi_{2}\left(\mathbb{A}^{2}\right)=\left\{(x: y: 0) \mid(x, y) \in K^{2} \backslash\{0\}\right\} \subset \mathbb{P}^{2}
$$

is a projective line, called the line at infinity ${ }^{2}$ (w.r.t. the chart $\varphi_{2}$ ). We will usually refer to $\varphi_{2}$. Visualize in $K^{3}=\mathbb{R}^{3}$.

Exercise 1.3. Generalize to the $n$-dimensional case.
1.b. Algebraic sets and homogenization. The vanishing set

$$
V(F):=\left\{(x, y) \in K^{2} \mid F(x, y)=0\right\}
$$

of a polynomial $F \in K[x, y]$ is an example of a so-called algebraic set.

[^45]Example 1.4. Visualize in $K^{2}=\mathbb{R}^{2}$ the vanishing sets of the degree 2 polynomials

$$
F=x^{2}+y^{2}-1, \quad F=x^{2}-y^{2}, \quad \text { and } F=x^{2}-y .
$$

For each $F$ visualize the image $\varphi_{2}(V(F)) \subset \mathbb{P}^{2}(\mathbb{R})$ by its trace in $K^{3}=\mathbb{R}^{3}$ and obtain special (singular) ruled surfaces ${ }^{3}$.

Definition 1.5. Let $K$ be a field.
(1) A polynomial $F \in K\left[x_{0}, \ldots, x_{n}\right]$ of degree $d$ is called homogeneous if all its monomials are of degree $d$. It follows that $F\left(\lambda x_{0}, \ldots, \lambda x_{n}\right)=\lambda^{d} F\left(x_{0}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$.
(2) For a polynomial $F \in K[x, y]$ define the homogenization $F^{*} \in K[x, y, z]$ (w.r.t. $\varphi_{2}$ ) by setting

$$
F^{*}(x, y, z):=z^{d} F\left(\frac{x}{z}, \frac{y}{z}\right) \in K[x, y, z]
$$

where $d=\operatorname{deg} F$. The homogenization is a homogeneous polynomial of degree $d$.
Remark 1.6. Let $F \in K[x, y]$. The trace of the image $\varphi_{2}(V(F))$ coincides with the affine points of the vanishing set of the homogenized polynomial $F^{*}$ :

$$
\varphi_{2}(V(F))=V\left(F^{*}\right) \backslash U
$$

Example 1.7. Homogenizing the polynomials in Example 1.4 we get

$$
F^{*}=x^{2}+y^{2}-z^{2}, \quad F^{*}=x^{2}-y^{2}, \quad \text { and } F^{*}=x^{2}-y z
$$

Visualize $V\left(F^{*}\right)$ in $K^{3}=\mathbb{R}^{3}$.
(1) $V\left(x^{2}+y^{2}-z^{2}\right)$ does not intersect the line at infinity $U=\{z=0\}$ if $K=\mathbb{R}$. What happens for $K$ algebraically closed (e.g., $K=\mathbb{C}$ )?
(2) $V\left(x^{2}-y^{2}\right)$ has exactly two points at infinity, namely $(1: 1: 0)$ and $(1,-1: 0)$.
(3) $V\left(x^{2}-y z\right)$ meets $U$ in the point $(0: 1: 0)$ (but with "multiplicity" 2). Visualize by a perspective drawing in $K^{2}=\mathbb{R}^{2}$ with the line at infinity being the horizon.
EXERCISE 1.8. Discuss the points at infinity of $V\left(x^{2}+y^{2}-z^{2}\right), V\left(x^{2}-y^{2}\right)$, and $V\left(x^{2}-y z\right)$ w.r.t. the two other standard charts $\varphi_{0}$ and $\varphi_{1}$.

In what follows we will often write $F \in K[x, y]$ and mean $V\left(F^{*}\right) \in \mathbb{P}^{2}$. An $L(x, y)=$ $R(x, y)$ will stand for the polynomial $F:=L-R$, so $V(L=R):=V(L-R)$.
1.c. Elliptic curves. Let $K$ be a field.

Definition 1.9. The equation

$$
E^{*}: y^{2} z+a_{1} x y z+a_{3} y z^{2}=x^{3}+a_{2} x^{2} z+a_{4} x z^{2}+a_{6} z^{3}, \quad a_{i} \in K
$$

is called the (homogeneous) Weierstrass equation. It is the homogenization of the (affine) Weierstrass equation

$$
E: y^{2}+a_{1} x y+a_{3} y=x^{3}+a_{2} x^{2}+a_{4} x+a_{6}, \quad a_{i} \in K
$$

[^46]Denote the vanishing set of $E^{*}$ by

$$
E(K):=V\left(E^{*}\right) \subset \mathbb{P}^{2}
$$

The point $(0: 1: 0)$ is the only point of $E(K)$ at infinity, i.e., at $z=0$. It has "multiplicity" 3 since $E^{*}(x, y, 0): x^{3}=0$.

REMARK 1.10 (Normal forms). Depending on the characteristic of the field $K$ one can transform the Weierstrass equation into a simpler form by a coordinate change:
(1) If char $K \neq 2$ then complete the square by substituting $y \rightarrow y-\frac{a_{1} x+a_{3}}{2}$ to obtain the normal form

$$
y^{2}=x^{3}+a_{2}^{\prime} x^{2}+a_{4}^{\prime} x+a_{6}^{\prime},
$$

the right hand side being a cubical univariate polynomial (e.g., $a_{2}^{\prime}=a_{2}+\frac{a_{1}^{4}}{4}$ ).
(2) If char $K \neq 2,3$ then the substitution $x \rightarrow x-\frac{1}{3} a_{2}^{\prime}$ finally yields

$$
y^{2}=x^{3}+a x+b .
$$

Example 1.11. We fix $K=\mathbb{R}$, so let $f(x)=x^{3}+a x+b \in \mathbb{R}[x]$. We distinguish three cases:
(1) $f(x)$ has exactly one real root. Visualize $V\left(y^{2}=f(x)\right)$ for $a>0, a=0, a<0$.
(2) $f(x)$ has exactly three real roots. Visualize.
(3) $f(x)$ has one simple and one double root. Visualize.
(4) $f(x)$ has one triple root. Visualize.

Example 1.12. The elliptic curve $E: y^{2}=x^{3}+2 x-1$ over $K=\mathbb{F}_{5}$ has 6 points:

$$
\begin{array}{c|ccccc}
x & 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
\hline f(x) & 4 & 2 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\
y & 2,3 & - & 1,4 & - & 1,4 \\
E\left(\mathbb{F}_{5}\right)=\{(0,2),(0,3),(2,1),(2,4),(4,1),(4,4)\} .
\end{array}
$$

1.c.i. Singularities. Let $K$ be a field, $E$ a Weierstrass equation, and

$$
\begin{aligned}
F & :=y^{2}+a_{1} x y+a_{3} y-\left(x^{3}+a_{2} x^{2}+a_{4} x+a_{6}\right), \\
F^{*} & :=y^{2} z+a_{1} x y z+a_{3} y z^{2}-\left(x^{3}+a_{2} x^{2} z+a_{4} x z^{2}+a_{6} z^{3}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

be the corresponding defining (affine resp. homogenous) polynomials.
Definition 1.13. Let $P=\left(x_{0}: y_{0}: z_{0}\right) \in E(K)$ be a point on the elliptic curve. W.l.o.g. assume $x_{0} \neq 0$.

- $P$ is called a singular point (of $E$ ) or simply singular if

$$
\frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial y}\left(x_{0}, y_{0}, z_{0}\right)=\frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial z}\left(x_{0}, y_{0}, z_{0}\right)=0
$$

- $E(K)$ (or $E$ ) is called singular if there is a singular point $P \in E(K)$, otherwise nonsingular or smooth.


## Remark 1.14.

(1) $(0: 1: 0)$ is not a singular point: $\frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial z}(0,1,0)=\left(y^{2}+a_{1} x y+2 a_{3} y z-a_{2} x^{2}-2 a_{4} x z-\right.$ $\left.3 a_{6} z^{2}\right)(0,1,0)=1 \neq 0$.
(2) char $K \neq 2,3: \operatorname{disc}\left(x^{3}+a x+b\right)=-\left(4 a^{3}+27 b^{2}\right)$.
(3) char $K \neq 2: E: y^{2}=f(x)$. Then $E$ is singular $\Longleftrightarrow \operatorname{disc} f=0$.

Definition 1.15. $E$ is called an elliptic curve if $E$ is smooth.


Figure 1. A family of elliptic curves.

Begin
Lect. 24

## 2. The group structure $(E,+)$

Let $K$ be a field, $\bar{K}$ its algebraic closure, and $E$ an elliptic curve over $K$. In this section $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ refers to $\mathbb{P}^{2}:=\mathbb{P}^{2}(\bar{K})$ (the $\bar{K}$ points of $E$ ).

Theorem 2.1. Let $L \subset \mathbb{P}^{2}$ be a line. Then $|L \cap E(\bar{K})|=3$, counted with multiplicity.
Proof. The idea is the following: Substituting a parametrization of the line yields an equation of degree 3 in one indeterminate (parameter the line). This has exactly three roots in $\bar{K}$ counted with multiplicity. It is not obvious how this argument takes care of points at infinity. So we give an elementary proof. Let

$$
L=\{(x: y: z) \mid a x+b y+c z=0\} \in \mathbb{P}^{2} \text { with }(a, b, c) \neq(0,0,0)
$$

Case 1: $a=b=0: L=\left\{(x: y: 0) \in \mathbb{P}^{2}\right\}$ is the line at infinity. To compute $L \cap E(\bar{K})$ set $z=0$ in $E$ to obtain $x^{3}=0$. The infinite far point $(0: 1: 0)$ is a root of multiplicity 3 .
Case 2: $a \neq 0$ or $b \neq 0: L=\{(x, y) \mid a x+b y=-c\} \cup\{(b:-a: 0)\}$.
Case a: $b \neq 0:(b:-a: 0) \neq(0: 1: 0)$, hence $(b:-a: 0) \notin E(\bar{K})$. Now we compute the affine points by substituting $y=-\frac{a x+c}{b}$ in $E$ to obtain a cubic polynomial in $x$ with 3 roots in $\bar{K}$ (counted with multiplicity).

Case $\mathrm{b}: b=0, a \neq 0:(0: 1: 0) \in E(\bar{K}) \cap L$. To determine the affine points substitute $x=-\frac{c}{a}$ in $E$ and obtain a quadratic polynomial in $y$ that has two roots in $\bar{K}$ (counted with multiplicity). This gives 3 points.

REmark 2.2. BÉzout's theorem states two curves of degree $n$ and $m$ which do not have a common component intersect in $n m$ points counting multiplicities. The previous Theorem is a special case of BÉzOUT's theorem. That two distinct lines intersect in exactly one points is also a special case.
2.a. Tangents. Let $F^{*}=y^{2} z+a_{1} x y z+a_{3} y z^{2}-\left(x^{3}+a_{2} x^{2} z+a_{4} x z^{2}+a_{6} z^{3}\right)$ and $E$ the corresponding elliptic curve.

Definition 2.3. Let $P \in E(\bar{K})$. The line

$$
T_{P}:=\left\{(u: v: w) \in \mathbb{P}^{2} \left\lvert\, \frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial x}(P) \cdot u+\frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial y}(P) \cdot v+\frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial z}(P) \cdot w=0\right.\right\}
$$

is called the tangent of $E$ at $P$. One can rewrite the defining equation as $\nabla F^{*}(P) \cdot\left(\begin{array}{c}u \\ v \\ w\end{array}\right)=$ 0 , where $\nabla=\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\right)$.

Remark 2.4.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial x}=a_{1} y z-3 x^{2}-2 a_{2} x z-a_{4} z^{2}  \tag{1}\\
& \frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial y}=2 y z+a_{1} x z+a_{3} z^{2} \\
& \frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial z}=y^{2}+a_{1} x y+2 a_{3} y z-a_{2} x^{2}-2 a_{4} x z-3 a_{6} z^{2}
\end{align*}
$$

(2) If $P=(0: 1: 0)$ then $\nabla F^{*}(P)=(0,0,1)$. Hence $T_{P}=\{(u: v: w) \mid w=0\}=U$, the line at infinity.
(3) If $P=(x: y: 1)$ then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial x}(P)=a_{1} y-3 x^{2}-2 a_{2} x-a_{4} . \\
& \frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial y}(P)=2 y+a_{1} x+a_{3} . \\
& \frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial z}(P)=y^{2}+a_{1} x y+2 a_{3} y-a_{2} x^{2}-2 a_{4} x-3 a_{6} . \\
& \text { Verify that } \nabla F^{*}(P) \cdot\left(\begin{array}{c}
u \\
v \\
w
\end{array}\right)=3 F(x, y) .
\end{aligned}
$$

From (2) and (3) we deduce that $P \in T_{P}$ for all $P \in E(\bar{K})$. On can prove that $P \in E(\bar{K})$ is a multiple intersection point of $T_{P}$ and $E(\bar{K})$ wit multiplicity at least 2 . We have verified this for infinite point $(0: 1: 0)$ which is an intersection point with multiplicity 3 .

## Definition 2.5.

(1) Fix $O:=(0: 1: 0) \in E(\bar{K})$ (O like origin).
(2) For $P, Q \in E(\bar{K})$ define $P * Q$ by $E(\bar{K}) \cap L=\{P, Q, P * Q\}$, where

$$
L:=\left\{\begin{array}{lll}
\overline{P Q} & \text { if } & P \neq Q \\
T_{P} & \text { if } & P=Q
\end{array} .\right.
$$

(3) Finally define the operation + for $P, Q \in E(\bar{K})$ by

$$
P+Q:=(P * Q) * O .
$$

Visualize!
Caution: This is different from the sum of traces $P+Q=\overline{P Q}$.

$P+Q+R=O$

Figure 2. The group law on the $\mathbb{R}$-points of the elliptic curve $E: y^{2}=$

$P+Q+Q=O$
$P+Q+O=O$
$P+P+O=O$ $x^{3}-x+1$

REmARK 2.6. Let $P, Q, R$ be points on $E(\bar{K})$. Then
(1) $*$ and + are commutative.
(2) $(P * Q) * P=Q$.
(3) $O * O=O$.
(4) Let $L \in \mathbb{P}^{2}$ be an arbitrary line, $E(\bar{K}) \cap L=\{P, Q, R\}$, then $(P+Q)+R=O$.
(5) $P+O=P$.
(6) $P+Q=O \Longleftrightarrow P * Q=0$.
(7) + is associative (!)
(8) $(E(\bar{K}),+)$ is an Abelian group with neutral element $O$ and $-P=P * O$.
(9) $E(K)$ is a subgroup of $E(\bar{K})$.

Proof. (1) By construction.
(2) Definition of *.
(3) Remark 2.4.

$$
\begin{equation*}
(P+Q)+R:=((\underbrace{(P * Q)}_{R} * O) * R) * O \stackrel{(2)}{=} O * O \stackrel{(3)}{=} O \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

(5) $P+O=(P * O) * O=(O * P) * O=P$.
(6) $P+Q=O \Longleftrightarrow(P * Q) * O=O \stackrel{(5)}{\Longleftrightarrow} P * Q=O * O=O$.
(7) Without a further idea this leads to a lengthy case by case distinction. There exist wonderful geometric ${ }^{4}$ ideas to prove the associativity. We will see one of them next semester in the seminar.
(8) Follows from (5) and (6) $+(7)$
(9) Let $E$ be defined over $K$ and $P, Q \in E(K)$. Then $L, L \cap E$ is defined over $K$. Then $P * Q$ is as the third root of $L \cap E(K)$ is also in $K$. The is a special case of the following simple fact:
If $f \in K[x]$ with $\operatorname{deg} f=r$ and if $r-1$ roots are in $K$ then the last root is in $K$.
2.b. A formula for $-P:=P * O$ where $P \neq O$. Let $P=\left(x_{0}, y_{0}\right)=\left(x_{0}: y_{0}: 1\right)$ (affine) and $O=(0: 1: 0)$. Next, we want to determine $\overline{P O}$. The following equivalences are immediate: $(x: y: 1) \in \overline{P O} \Longleftrightarrow\left(\begin{array}{l}x \\ y \\ 1\end{array}\right) \in\left\langle\left(\begin{array}{c}x_{0} \\ y_{0} \\ 1\end{array}\right),\left(\begin{array}{l}0 \\ 1 \\ 0\end{array}\right)\right\rangle \Longleftrightarrow x=x_{0}$. So $\overline{P O}=\left\{\left(x_{0}: y: 1\right) \mid y \in K\right\} \cup\{O\}$.
$\left(x_{0}: y: 1\right) \in E(K) \Longleftrightarrow F\left(x_{0}, y\right)=0 \Longleftrightarrow y=y_{0}, y_{1}$ where $F\left(x_{0}, y\right)=\left(y-y_{0}\right)\left(y-y_{1}\right)$. Coefficient matching yields: $-y_{0}-y_{1}=a_{1} x_{0}+a_{3}$, so $y_{1}=-y_{0}-a_{1} x_{0}-a_{3}$. Finally,

$$
-P=P * O=\left(x_{0}:-y_{0}-a_{1} x_{0}-a_{3}: 1\right)
$$

For the most important special case: $E: y^{2}=f(x)$, e.g. when char $K \neq 2$. Then $a_{1}=a_{3}=0$ and

$$
-\left(x_{0}, y_{0}\right)=\left(x_{0},-y_{0}\right)
$$

2.c. A formula for $P * Q$ where $P, Q \neq O$. Let $P=\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right)=\left(x_{1}: y_{1}: 1\right)$ and $Q=\left(x_{2}, y_{2}\right)=\left(x_{2}: y_{2}: 1\right)$ be two affine points. By definition, $P * Q=O \Longleftrightarrow P * O=Q$ $\Longleftrightarrow x_{1}=x_{2}$ and $y_{1}+y_{2}+a_{1} x_{1}+a_{3}=0$. For each line $L \subset \mathbb{P}^{2}$ we have: $O=(0: 1: 0) \in L$ $\Longleftrightarrow L \cap \mathbb{A}^{2}$ is parallel to the $y$-axis. Let without w.l.o.g. $P * Q \neq O$ (otherwise $Q=-P$ ). Set

$$
L:=\left\{\begin{array}{lll}
\overline{P Q} & \text { if } & P \neq Q \\
T_{P} & \text { if } & P=Q
\end{array} .\right.
$$

Then $L \cap \mathbb{A}^{2}=\{(x, y) \mid y=\lambda x+\nu\}$ for some $\lambda, \nu \in K$.
Case $P \neq Q$ : Then

$$
\lambda=\frac{y_{2}-y_{1}}{x_{2}-x_{1}} \text { and } \nu=y_{1}-\lambda x_{1}
$$

[^47]Case $P=Q=\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right)=\left(x_{1}: y_{1}: 1\right)$ :

$$
T_{P} \cap \mathbb{A}^{2}=\left\{(x, y) \left\lvert\, \frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial x}(P) \cdot x+\frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial y}(P) \cdot y+\frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial z}(P)=0\right.\right\}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial x}(P)=a_{1} y-3 x^{2}-2 a_{2} x-a_{4} \\
& \frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial y}(P)=2 y+a_{1} x+a_{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

Solving for $y$ we recover the slope ${ }^{5}$

$$
\lambda=-\frac{\frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial x}(P)}{\frac{\partial F^{*}}{\partial y}(P)}=\frac{a_{1} y-3 x^{2}-2 a_{2} x-a_{4}}{2 y+a_{1} x+a_{3}} .
$$

Further $L \cap E(K)=L \cap \mathbb{A}^{2} \cap E(K)$. Write $F(x, \lambda x+\nu)=-\left(x-x_{1}\right)\left(x-x_{2}\right)\left(x-x_{3}\right)$. Coefficient matching at $x^{2}$ yields: $x_{1}+x_{2}+x_{3}=\lambda^{2}+a_{1} x-a_{2}$. Finally, $P * Q=\left(x_{3}, y_{3}\right)$ with

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x_{3}=\lambda^{2}+a_{1} \lambda-a_{2}-x_{1}-x_{2} \\
& y_{3}=\lambda x_{3}+\nu=\lambda\left(x_{3}-x_{1}\right)+y_{1}
\end{aligned}
$$

2.d. A formula for $P+Q$ where $P, Q \neq O$. We now put together the above computations for $P+Q=(P * Q) * O$

$$
P+Q=(\underbrace{\lambda^{2}+a_{1} \lambda-a_{2}-x_{1}-x_{2}}_{=x_{3}}, \underbrace{-y_{1}+\lambda\left(x_{1}-x_{3}\right)-a_{1} x_{1}-a_{3}}_{=y_{3}}) .
$$

For the most important special case: $y^{2}=x^{3}+a x+b$, i.e., $a_{1}=a_{2}=a_{3}=0, a_{4}=a$, and $a_{6}=b$. Then

$$
\lambda=\frac{y_{2}-y_{1}}{x_{2}-x_{1}} \text { if } P \neq Q \quad \text { or } \quad \lambda=\frac{3 x_{1}^{2}+a}{2 y_{1}} \text { if } P=Q
$$

Finally,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x_{3}=\lambda^{2}-x_{1}-x_{2}, \\
& y_{3}=-y_{1}+\lambda\left(x_{1}-x_{3}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

EXAMPLE 2.7. We take $K=\mathbb{F}_{5} \cong \mathbb{Z} / 5 \mathbb{Z}$ and $y^{2}=x^{3}+2 x-1$. Verify that

$$
E\left(\mathbb{F}_{5}\right)=\{(0,2),(0,3),(2,1),(2,4),(4,1),(4,4)\} \cup\{O\}
$$

- $P=(0,2) \Longrightarrow-P=(0,-2)=(0,3)$.
- $Q=(2,1) \Longrightarrow P+Q=(2,4)$.
- $P+P=2 P=(4,1)$.
- $(0,3)+(2,1)=(4,1)$.

[^48]REMARK 2.8. The choice of $O:=(0: 1: 0)$ was arbitrary but convenient for two reasons:
(1) It is the unique non-affine point w.r.t. the fixed coordinate system.
(2) It satisfies $O * O=O$.

## 3. Elliptic curves over finite fields

3.a. Squares in finite fields. Finding square roots in the finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ is the first step to find $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-points (i.e., points in $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)$ ) on an elliptic curve $E$.

Remark 3.1. Let $p$ be a prime and $q$ a power of $p$.
(1) $\mathrm{sq}: \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}, x \mapsto x^{2}$ has kernel ker sq $=\{ \pm 1\}$. Hence

$$
\left|\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}\right)^{2}\right|=\left\{\begin{array}{cc}
\frac{q-1}{2} & \text { for } \quad q \text { odd } \\
q-1 & \text { for }
\end{array} q \text { even } .\right.
$$

(2) Define for $q$ odd the quadratic character

$$
\chi: \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*} \rightarrow\{ \pm 1\} \subset \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}, x \mapsto x^{\frac{q-1}{2}}
$$

That $\chi(a)=1 \Longleftrightarrow a \in\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}\right)^{2}$, easily follows from (1) generalizing Theorem 5.2.4 by Euler.

Algorithm 3.2. Given an odd prime power $q$ and an $a \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$ with $\chi(a)=1$.
return $b \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$ with $b^{2}=a$ using the algorithm in the proof of Theorem 5.2.18, slightly generalized for prime powers.
3.b. Counting points. Let $E$ be an elliptic curve over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ and $N:=\left|E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)\right|$.

Theorem 3.3 (Hasse-Weil). Let $a:=q+1-N$ and $\alpha, \beta$ be the roots of the quadratic polynomial $x^{2}-a x+q$. Then

$$
|a| \leq 2 \sqrt{q}
$$

Further,

$$
\left|E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q^{m}}\right)\right|=q^{m}+1-\left(\alpha^{m}+\beta^{m}\right)
$$

for all $m \in \mathbb{N}$.
Proof. A good reference is [Was08, Theorem 4.2]. We will prove this theorem in the seminar, next semester.

Remark 3.4. For $N=\left|E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)\right|$ the Hasse-Weil theorem estimates

$$
q+1-2 \sqrt{q} \leq N \leq q+1+2 \sqrt{q} .
$$

If $q$ is a prime one can show that each natural number in this interval occurs as the order of an elliptic curve $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)$.

Example 3.5. Let $E: y^{2}=x^{3}+7 x+1$ be an elliptic curve of $\mathbb{F}_{101}$. It is possible to show that the point $(0,1)$ has order 116 (see Algorithm 3.8 below), so $N=\left|E\left(\mathbb{F}_{101}\right)\right|$ is a multiple of 116. But the Hasse-Weil theorem says that

$$
81 \leq 101+1-2 \sqrt{101} \leq N \leq 101+1+2 \sqrt{101} \leq 123
$$

and the only multiple of 116 in this range is 116 . Hence, $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{101}\right)$ is cyclic of order $N:=$ $\left|E\left(\mathbb{F}_{101}\right)\right|=116$, generated by $(0,1)$.

Example 3.6. With little effort we can determine all the points of $E: y^{2}+x y=x^{3}+1$ over the small field $\mathbb{F}_{2}$ :

$$
E\left(\mathbb{F}_{2}\right)=\{O,(0,1),(1,0),(1,1)\}
$$

Determining all $\mathbb{F}_{2^{101}}$-points is extremely hard (and of course useless). With $a=-1$ and $q=2$ the Hasse-Weil theorem counts for us the number of points:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|E\left(\mathbb{F}_{2^{101}}\right)\right| & =2^{101}+1-\left[\left(\frac{-1+\sqrt{-7}}{2}\right)^{101}+\left(\frac{-1-\sqrt{-7}}{2}\right)^{101}\right] \\
& =2^{101}+1-2969292210605269 \\
& =2535301200456455833701195805484 \approx 2.5 \cdot 10^{30}
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 3.7 ([Was08, Theorem 4.3]). Let $p$ be a prime and $q=p^{n}$ and define $N:=q+1-a$ for some $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $|a| \leq 2 \sqrt{q}$. Then there is an elliptic curve $E$ defined over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ with $\left|E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)\right|=N$ if and only if a satisfies one of the following conditions:
(1) $(a, p)=1$.
(2) $n$ is even and $a= \pm 2 \sqrt{q}$.
(3) $n$ is even, $p \not \equiv 1 \bmod 3$, and $a= \pm \sqrt{q}$.
(4) $n$ is odd, $p=2$ or $p=3$, and $a= \pm p^{\frac{n+1}{2}}$.
(5) $n$ is even, $p \not \equiv 1 \bmod 4$, and $a=0$.
(6) $n$ is odd and $a=0$.

Let $P \in E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)$. We want to find the order of $P$ as an element of the group $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)$. We know that $N P=O$. Of course we don't know $N$ yet, but we know that $q+1-2 \sqrt{2} \leq$ $N \leq q+1+2 \sqrt{q}$. One could of course try all values in this interval. This would take $4 \sqrt{q}$ steps. The following algorithm runs in about $4 q^{\frac{1}{4}}$ steps:

Algorithm 3.8 (Baby step, giant step, [Was08, §4.3.4]). Given $P \in E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)$ compute its order.
(1) Compute $Q=(q+1) P$.
(2) Choose an integer $m>q^{\frac{1}{4}}$. Compute and save the points $j P$ for $j=0, \ldots, m$ (baby steps).
(3) Compute the points

$$
Q+k(2 m P) \text { for } k=-m, \ldots, m
$$

(giant steps) until $Q+k(2 m P)= \pm j P$. Then $M P=O$ with $M:=q+1+2 m k \mp j$.
(4) Factor $M=p_{1}^{e_{1}} \cdots p_{r}^{e_{r}}$. Compute $\left(M / p_{i}\right) P$ for $i=1, \ldots, r$. If $\left(M / p_{i}\right) P=O$ for some $i$, replace $M$ with $M / p_{i}$ and repeat the step until $\left(M / p_{i}\right) P \neq O$ for all $i$. Then $M$ is the order of $P$.
To determine $N=\left|E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)\right|$ continue as follows:
(5) Repeat the previous steps with randomly chosen points in $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)$ until the least common multiple of the element order divides only one integer $N$ in the HasseWeil interval. It is then the group order $N$.

Proof. Justifying the existence of $k, j$ in (3) is an exercise.
Example 3.9. Let $E$ be the elliptic curve $y^{2}=x^{3}-10 x+21$ over $\mathbb{F}_{557}$ and $P=(2,3) \in$ $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{557}\right)$.
(1) $Q=558 P=(418,33)$.
(2) Let $m=5>557^{\frac{1}{4}}$. The list of $j P$ 's ("baby steps") is

$$
O,(2,3),(58,164),(44,294),(56,339),(132,364)
$$

(3) For $k=1$ we discover that $Q+k(2 m P)=(2,3)$ matches the list for $j=1$ ("giant step"). Hence $(q+1+2 m k-j) P=567 P=O$.
(4) Factor $567=3^{4} \cdot 7$. Compute $(567 / 3) P=189 P=O$. Factor $189=3^{3} \cdot 7$. Compute $(189 / 3) P=(38,535) \neq O$ and $(189 / 7) P=(136,360) \neq O$. Therefore, 189 is the order of $P$.
(5) This suffices to conclude that $\left|E\left(\mathbb{F}_{557}\right)\right|=567$.

REmark 3.10. There exists an algorithm due to Schoof which computes the number of points on an elliptic curves over finite fields $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ in about $\log ^{8} q$ steps (cf. [Was08, §4.5]).

## 3.c. Finding points.

Algorithm 3.11. Let $q$ be a power of an odd prime and $E: y^{2}=f(x)$ an elliptic curve of $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ (cf. Remark 1.10). The following algorithm returns an $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-point of $E$ :
(1) Choose $x \in \mathbb{F}_{q}$ randomly until $f(x) \in\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)^{2}$ (test $f(x)=0$ or $\left.f(x)^{\frac{q-1}{2}}=1 \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\right)$.
(2) Compute a square root $y$ with $y^{2}=f(x)$ using Algorithm 3.2.

Remark 3.12.
For finding points on elliptic curves over $\mathbb{F}_{2^{n}}$ see [Kob98, Exercise 6.2.2, page 136].
3.d. The structure of the group $(E,+)$.

Theorem 3.13 (Structure Theorem for finitely generated Abelian groups). Let $A$ be a finitely generated ABELian group. Then there exist $r, k \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ and $n_{1}, \ldots, n_{k} \in \mathbb{N}$ with $n_{i} \mid n_{i+1}$ such that

$$
A \cong \mathbb{Z}^{r} \times \mathbb{Z} / n_{1} \mathbb{Z} \times \cdots \mathbb{Z} / n_{k} \mathbb{Z}
$$

$r$ is called the $\operatorname{rank}^{6}$ of $A$ and the $n_{i}$ 's are called the determinantal divisors of $A$.

[^49]Theorem 3.14 (Structure Theorem for elliptic curves over finite fields). There exists natural numbers $n_{1}, n_{2}$ with $n_{1} \mid n_{2}$ such that

$$
E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right) \cong \mathbb{Z} / n_{1} \mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} / n_{2} \mathbb{Z}
$$

Proof. We will prove this in the seminar. The statement includes the case $\left(n_{1}, n_{2}\right)=$ $(1, n)$ in which case $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right) \cong \mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$.

One can sharpen this further
TheOrem 3.15 (Structure Theorem for elliptic curves over finite fields (refined version)). Let $p, q$, and $N$ be as in Theorem 3.7. Write $N=p^{e} n_{1} n_{2}$ with $p \nmid n_{1} n_{2}$ and $n_{1} \mid n_{2}$ (possibly $n_{1}=1$ ). There exists an elliptic curve $E$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ such that

$$
E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right) \cong \mathbb{Z} / p^{e} \mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} / n_{1} \mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} / n_{2} \mathbb{Z}
$$

if and only if
(1) $n_{1} \mid q-1$ in the cases (1), (3), (4), (5), (6) of Theorem 3.7.
(2) $n_{1}=n_{2}$ in casse (2) of Theorem 3.7.

These are all groups that occur as $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)$.
Example 3.16. Here are the possible isomorphism types of elliptic curves $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{5}\right)$ :

- HASSE-Weil states that $2 \leq N=E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right) \leq 10$. This leaves us with the following possibilities (according to Theorem 3.13):

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathbb{Z} / 2, \mathbb{Z} / 3, \mathbb{Z} / 4, \mathbb{Z} / 2 \times \mathbb{Z} / 2, \mathbb{Z} / 5, \mathbb{Z} / 6 \cong \mathbb{Z} / 2 \times \mathbb{Z} / 3, \mathbb{Z} / 7, \mathbb{Z} / 8 \\
& \mathbb{Z} / 2 \times \mathbb{Z} / 4, \underline{\mathbb{Z} / 2 \times \mathbb{Z} / 2 \times \mathbb{Z} / 2}, \mathbb{Z} / 9, \underline{\mathbb{Z} / 3 \times \mathbb{Z} / 3}, \mathbb{Z} / 10 \cong \mathbb{Z} / 2 \times \mathbb{Z} / 5
\end{aligned}
$$

- The above refined structure theorem 3.15 rules out the underlined groups.

Begin
Lect. 26

## 4. LeNSTRA's factorization method

We now come to one of the amazing applications of elliptic curves. It can be viewed as an ingenious variation of Pollard's $p-1$ method (see Section 8.1), but one that comes with an extra degree of freedom: Since it is based on elliptic curves, one can vary the used curve, and even run the algorithm for different curves in parallel.

Let $n$ be the composite number that we want to factorize. LENSTRA's method relies on the choice of random elliptic curves $E_{i}$ over the ring $\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$ with random points on $E_{i}(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})$ (the group law of elliptic curves over rings is more involved [Was08, §2.11]). If one starts with the elliptic curve then finding a point involves finding a square root modulo $n$ which, as we saw in Lemma 5.2.20, is computationally equivalent to factoring $n$. To overcome this problem the choice of the curve cannot be independent from the choice of the point: Choose a random element $a \bmod n$ and a random pair $P=(u, v) \bmod n$. Then compute

$$
b \equiv v^{2}-u^{3}-a u \bmod n
$$

The random elliptic curve

$$
y^{2}=x^{3}+a x+b
$$

has the $\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$-point $P=(u, v)$.

Algorithm 4.1 (Lenstra). The following algorithm takes a composite number $n$ as its input and returns a factor of $n$ or fail.
(1) Choose several ${ }^{7}$ random elliptic curves $E_{i}: y^{2}=x^{3}+a_{i} x+b_{i}$ over $\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$ together with $\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$-points $P_{i}$ (as above).
(2) Choose a bound $B\left(\approx 10^{8}\right)$ and compute $\operatorname{lcm}\{1, \ldots, B\} P_{i}\left(\right.$ or $\left.(B!) P_{i}\right)$ on $E_{i}(\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z})$ for each $i$.
(3) If step (2) fails because some slope $\lambda$ does not exist modulo $n$ then we have found a factor of $n$. return this factor.
(4) return fail.

REmARK 4.2.

- One can use Remark 3.4 to explain why this method often yields a nontrivial factor. For details see [Was08, p. 193].
- The method is very effective in finding prime factors $<10^{40}$. But in cryptographic applications ones uses prime numbers with at least 100 digits. In this range the quadratic sieve (QS) and the number field sieve methods (NFS) outperform Lenstra's method. Nevertheless, it is still useful in intermediate steps of several attacks.

Example 4.3 ([Was08, Example 7.1]). Let us demonstrate the method to factor $n=$ 4453. Choose the elliptic curve $y^{2}=x^{3}+10 x-2 \bmod n$ with $\mathbb{Z} / n \mathbb{Z}$-point $P=(1,3)$. Try to compute $3 P$. First compute $2 P$. The slope of the tangent at $P$ is

$$
\frac{3 x^{2}+10}{2 y}=\frac{13}{6} \equiv 3713 \bmod 4453
$$

Hence $2 P=(x, y)$ with

$$
x \equiv 3713^{2}-2 \equiv 4332 \bmod 4453, \text { and } y \equiv-3713(x-1)-3 \equiv 3230 \bmod 4453
$$

To compute $3 P$ we add $P$ to $2 P$. The slope is

$$
\frac{3230-3}{4332-1}=\frac{3227}{4331}
$$

But 4331 is not invertible modulo $n$ since $(4331,4453)=61 \neq 1$, and we have found a factor of $n$. This gives the factorization $4453=61 \cdot 73$. For the elliptic curve this means that

$$
E(\mathbb{Z} / 4453 \mathbb{Z})=E(\mathbb{Z} / 61 \mathbb{Z}) \times E(\mathbb{Z} / 73 \mathbb{Z})
$$

be the chinese remainder theorem.
The method worked since $\operatorname{ord}_{E(\mathbb{Z} / 61 \mathbb{Z})} P=3$ while $\operatorname{ord}_{E(\mathbb{Z} / 73 \mathbb{Z})}=64$. The improbable coincidence of these two orders would have produced $0 \bmod n$ as the denominator of the slope and the gcd would've been the trivial one $n=4453$.

[^50]
## 5. Elliptic curves cryptography (ECC)

The hardness of solving the DLP in an AbeLian group strongly depends on the way how the group is represented. For example $\mathbb{F}_{p}^{*} \cong(\mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z},+)$. The DLP is hard in the former and trivial in the latter.

The main usage of elliptic curves in cryptography is to provide an alternative realization of AbeLian groups for which all known attacks on the DLP quickly lose their strength (see Chapter 10).

In principle, any cryptosystem or signature scheme which is based on the DLP in $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$ can be used with elliptic curves. The Diffie-Hellman cryptosystem defined in 6.2.3 is a good example for this. There is even an elliptic curve analogue of RSA [Was08, §6.8] that was suggest by Koyama-Maurer-Okamoto-Vanstone.
5.a. A coding function for elliptic curves. But in order to do this we need a way to encode messages by points on an elliptic curve:
Let $E: y^{2}=x^{3}+a x+b$ be an elliptic curve over $\mathbb{F}_{p}$ with $p \gg 100$ an odd prime and let $m$ be a message encoded as a number $0 \leq m<\frac{p}{100}$. For $j=0, \ldots, 99$ compute $s_{j}=x_{j}^{3}+a x_{j}+b$ with $x_{j}:=100 m+j$ and check if $s_{j}$ is a square (iff $s_{j}^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1 \bmod p$ ). Stop at the first such $j$. Computing a square root $y_{j}$ by Algorithm 3.11 yields an element $P=\left(x_{j}, y_{j}\right)$ on $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{p}\right)$. Recover the number $m$ encoding the message as $\left\lfloor\frac{x_{j}}{100}\right\rfloor$. Since $s_{j}$ is a random element of $\mathbb{F}_{p}^{*}$ the probability of lying in $\left(\mathbb{F}_{p}^{*}\right)^{2}$ is $\frac{1}{2}$. So the probability of failing to find a point $P$ after 100 trials is $2^{-100}$.

This method was proposed by Neal Koblitz.

## CHAPTER 10

## Attacks on the discrete logarithm problem

In this chapter we list two attacks on the DLP. One is specific to the group $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$ and the other is independent of the representation of the AbELian group.

## 1. Specific attacks

1.a. The index calculus. This attack is specific to the group $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$. We will deal with the case $\mathbb{F}_{p}^{*}$ where $p$ is an odd prime. The general case $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$ requires more work.

So let $p$ be an odd prime and $g$ a generator of the cyclic group $\mathbb{F}_{p}^{*}$. The discrete logarithm (cf. Definition 1.3)

$$
\log _{g}: \mathbb{F}_{p}^{*} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z}
$$

defined by $g^{\log _{g} y}=y \bmod p$ is an isomorphism of cyclic groups, in particular,
$\left(\log _{g}\right) \quad \log _{g}\left(y_{1} y_{2}\right)=\log _{g}\left(y_{1}\right)+\log _{g}\left(y_{2}\right) \quad \bmod p-1$.
As we mentioned above, the DLP in the source group is hard, while the DLP in the range group is trivial.

The idea of the attack is to compute $\log _{g}(y)$ for "small" $y$ 's and then to use the identity $\left(\log _{g}\right)$ to compute $\log _{g}$ for arbitrary $y$ 's. Note that

$$
\log _{g}(-1) \equiv \frac{p-1}{2} \bmod p-1
$$

This is a reformulation of the equation $g^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv-1 \bmod p$.
Algorithm 1.1 (index calculus). The algorithm takes $y \in \mathbb{F}_{p}=\langle g\rangle$ as input and returns the discrete logarithm $\log _{g} y \in \mathbb{Z} /(p-1) \mathbb{Z}$ or fail.
(1) Choose a bound $B \in \mathbb{N}$ and the factor base $F(B)=\{p \in \mathbb{P} \mid p \leq B\} \cup\{-1\}=$ $\left\{-1, p_{1}, \ldots, p_{k}\right\}$.
(2) Search for $y_{i}$ 's for which the lift $b_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}$ of $g^{y_{i}} \in \mathbb{F}_{p}^{*}$ can be factored over $F(B)$, i.e., $b_{i} \equiv(-1)^{e_{i 0}} \prod_{j=1}^{k} p_{j}^{e_{i j}} \bmod p$. Do this until the set of equations

$$
y_{i} \equiv \underbrace{\log _{g}\left((-1)^{e_{i 0}}\right)}_{\equiv 0 \text { or } \frac{p-1}{2}}+e_{i 1} \log _{g} p_{1}+\cdots+e_{i k} \log _{g} p_{k} \quad \bmod p-1
$$

can be solved for the vector of $k$ unknowns $\left(\log _{g} p_{1}, \ldots, \log _{g} p_{k}\right)$. If the search fails return fail.
(3) Search for a $j$ for which the lift $b \in \mathbb{Z}$ of $g^{j} \cdot y \in \mathbb{F}_{p}^{*}$ can be factored over $F(B)$, i.e., $b \equiv(-1)^{a_{0}} \prod_{j=1}^{k} p_{j}^{a_{j}} \bmod p$. If the search fails return fail.
(4) Solve the equation

$$
j+\log y \equiv \underbrace{\log _{g}\left((-1)^{a_{0}}\right)}_{\equiv 0 \text { or } \frac{p-1}{2}}+a_{1} \log _{g} p_{1}+\cdots+a_{k} \log _{g} p_{k} \quad \bmod p-1
$$

and return $\log y$.
Example 1.2 ([Was08, Example 5.1]). We will demonstrate the method by computing the discrete logarithm $\log _{3} 37 \bmod \underbrace{1217}_{p}$. Choosing $B=13$ gives the factor base $F(B)=$ $\{-1,2,3,5,7,11,13\}$. We compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
3^{1} & \equiv 3 \quad \bmod 1217 \\
3^{24} & \equiv-2^{2} \cdot 7 \cdot 13 \\
3^{25} & \equiv 5^{3} \\
3^{30} & \equiv-2 \cdot 5^{2} \\
3^{54} & \equiv-5 \cdot 11 \\
3^{87} & \equiv 13
\end{aligned}
$$

This yields in particular: $\log _{3} 2 \equiv 216 \bmod \underbrace{1216}_{p-1}, \log _{3} 7 \equiv 113 \bmod 1216$, and $\log _{3} 11 \equiv$ $1059 \bmod$ 1216. Finally $3^{16} \cdot 37 \equiv 2^{3} \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \bmod 1217$. Therefore, $\log _{3} 37 \equiv 3 \log _{3} 2+$ $\log _{3} 7+\log _{3} 11-16 \equiv 588 \bmod 1216$.

Remark 1.3. Several remarks are in order:

- The method was successfully used to compute discrete logarithms modulo a 120digit prime.
- Finding the appropriate $y_{i}$ 's and the $j$ can be done using a version of the quadratic sieve (QS) or the number field sieve (NFS) as in Section 8.5.
- In contrast to $\mathbb{F}_{p}^{*}=(\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z})^{*}$, elements of $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{p}\right)$ are rarely reductions of elements in $E(\mathbb{Z})$ (or $E(\mathbb{Q})$ ). It is thus widely believed that the index calculus cannot be adapted to solve the DLP for elliptic curves.


## 2. General attacks

By general attacks we mean attacks applicable for all representations of a finite AbELian group. Pollard's $\rho$ method can be modified to give a general probabilistic algorithm to solve the DLP [Was08, §5.2.2]. From the many known general attacks on the DLP we only treat a modified version of the baby-step-giant-step algorithm.
2.a. Baby step, giant step. Let $G$ be an additively written Abelian group with (known) order $N$. W.l.o.g. we can assume that $G=\langle P\rangle$.

Algorithm 2.1 (Shanks). The following deterministic algorithm takes as input an element $Q \in G$ and returns the discrete $\operatorname{logarithm} k:=\log _{P} Q$, i.e., the minimal $k \in \mathbb{N}$ with $k P=Q$.
(1) Fix an $m>\sqrt{N}$ and compute $m P$.
(2) Compute and save the list $L:=(i P \mid 0 \leq i<m)$ ("baby steps").
(3) For $j=0, \ldots, m-1$ compute the points $Q-j m P$ ("giant steps") until one matches an element in $L$, say $i P=Q-j m P$.
(4) Since $Q=k P$ with $k \equiv i+j m \bmod N$ return (the smallest such) $k$.

Proof of correctness. Since $m^{2}>N$ it follows that $0 \leq k<m^{2}$. Write $k=i+j m$ with $0 \leq i<m$ and $0 \leq j=\frac{k-i}{m}<m$. Then $Q-j m P=k P-j m P=i P$.

Example 2.2 ([Was08, Example 5.2]). Let $G=E\left(\mathbb{F}_{41}\right)$, where $E: y^{2}=x^{3}+2 x+1$. Let $P=(0,1)$ and $Q=(30,40)$. The group order $N$ is at most 54 by HASSE-Weil, so set $m=8$. The list of baby steps $i P$ for $0 \leq i<8$ consists of the points

$$
O,(0,1),(1,39),(8,23),(38,38),(23,23),(20,28),(26,9) .
$$

We start calculation the big steps for $j=0,1,2, \ldots$

$$
(30,40),(9,25),(26,9),
$$

and stop since $(26,9)$ matches $7 P$ in the list. With $i=7$ and $j=2$ we compute the discrete logarithm $k=7+2 \cdot 8=23$. Indeed $Q=23 P$.

## CHAPTER 11

## Digital signatures

Under a digital signature or digital signature scheme (DSS) we understand a mathematical scheme for ensuring the authenticity of data. A digital signature should lose its validity if anything in the signed data was altered. This is one of the major advantages compared with ink on paper signatures.

## 1. Definitions

Definition 1.1. An asymmetric signature is a 5 -tuple $\left(M, S, \kappa: K^{\prime} \rightarrow K, \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{V}\right)$ where

- $M$ is called the set of messages,
- $S$ the set of signatures,
- $\kappa: K^{\prime} \rightarrow K, d \mapsto e$ a bijective map from the set of secret signing keys to the set of public verification keys,
- $\mathcal{S}=\left(\mathcal{S}_{d}: M \rightsquigarrow S\right)_{d \in K^{\prime}}$ a family of multi-valued polynomial algorithms called the signing algorithm,
- $\mathcal{V}=\left(\mathcal{V}_{e}: M \times S \rightarrow\{0,1\}\right)_{e \in K}$ a family of polynomial algorithms called the signature verifications satisfying $\mathcal{V}_{\kappa(d)}\left(m, \oint_{d}(m)\right)=0$.

Normally one signs only hash values of messages for performance reasons: "hash-thensign". We will come to hash functions below.

Definition 1.2. We list the following attacks models on a DSS:
(1) Key-only attack: The attacker only knows the public verification key of the signer.
(2) Known-message attack (KMA): The attacker receives some messages (he didn't choose) and their corresponding signatures.
(3) (Adaptive) chosen-message attack (CMA): The attacker is allowed to (adaptively) choose messages and receives the corresponding signatures.

Definition 1.3. We list the following goals of an attack on a DSS:
(1) Total break: Recover the signing key.
(2) Universal forgery ${ }^{1}$ : Forge signatures of any message.
(3) Existential forgery: Forge a signature for some message (without the ability to do this for any message).

[^51]The strongest security model among the above combinations is the security against existential forgery under an adaptive chosen message attack.

## 2. Signatures using OWF with trapdoors

Let $f:=\left(f_{i}\right)_{i \in I}: X \rightarrow X$ be a OWF with trapdoor information $\left(t_{i}\right)_{i \in I}$ as in Definition 5.2 .24 (e.g., the RABIN function 5.2.25 or the RSA function 6.1.2). Set

- $M=S=X$,
- $K=I, K^{\prime}=\left\{\left(i, t_{i}\right) \mid i \in I\right\}, \kappa: d:=\left(i, t_{i}\right) \mapsto e:=i$,
- $\mathcal{S}_{d}: M \rightarrow S, m \mapsto f_{e}^{-1}(m)$ (using the trapdoor information),
- $\mathcal{V}_{e}: M \times S \rightarrow\{0,1\},(m, s) \mapsto\left\{\begin{array}{lll}1 & \text { if } & f_{e}(s)=m \\ 0 & \text { if } & f_{e}(s) \neq m\end{array}\right.$.

Remark 2.1.
(1) Existential forgery is always possible by first choosing the signature $s$ then the message $m:=f_{e}(s)$.
(2) If the OWF $f$ is multiplicative (e.g., the RSA function: $(x y)^{e}=x^{e} y^{e}$ ) then the universal forgery under an adaptive chosen-message attack is possible: To sign $m$ decompose it as $m=m_{1} m_{2}$ with $m_{1}, m_{2} \neq m$. Ask for the signatures of $s_{i}$ of $m_{i}$ (this is allowed since $\left.m_{i} \neq m\right)$. Compute $(m, s)=\left(m, s_{1} s_{2}\right)$ by the multiplicativity of $f$.
(3) Another obvious drawback of this scheme is that the signature has the same length as the message.

We know give a variant of asymmetric signatures that, under certain assumptions, avoids the above mentioned drawbacks.

Definition 2.2 (Hash-then-sign). This is a variant of Definition 1.1 with the following modifications (we are still using the notation of this section):

- $M=\{0,1\}^{\bullet}, S=X$.
- $H: M \rightarrow X$ a map given by a polynomial algorithm, called the hash function.
- $\mathcal{S}_{d}: M \rightarrow S, m \mapsto f_{e}^{-1}(H(m))$.
- $\nu_{e}: M \times S \rightarrow\{0,1\},(m, s) \mapsto\left\{\begin{array}{lll}1 & \text { if } & f_{e}(s)=H(m) \\ 0 & \text { if } & f_{e}(s) \neq H(m)\end{array}\right.$.

To avoid the above attack scenarios the hash function $H$ must be a one-way nonmultiplicative function.

## 3. Hash functions

## Definition 3.1.

(1) A hash function is a function $H:\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\ell}$ for some fixed $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$ given by a polynomial algorithm.
(2) $H$ is called collision resistant if it is unfeasible to find distinct $x_{1}, x_{2}$ with $H\left(x_{1}\right)=H\left(x_{2}\right)$.

Remark 3.2.
(1) A collision resistant hash function is a one-way function (since finding a preimage of $H\left(x_{1}\right)$ would lead to a collision).
(2) An "ideal" hash function behaves like a random oracle (RO): A random oracle would give to each $x \in\{0,1\}^{\bullet}$ a random answer $H(x) \in\{0,1\}^{\ell}$ and would store the answer internally as $H[x]$. If the oracle is given the same $x$ again it will return the cached value $H[x]$.
(3) It is unknown if an "ideal" hash function exists.

Example 3.3 (Hash functions from block ciphers). Let $(A, \ell, K, \mathcal{E})$ be a block cipher $\left(\mathcal{E}: B \times K \rightarrow B=A^{\ell},(p, e) \mapsto \mathcal{E}_{e}(p)\right)$. Let $A=\{0,1\}$ and $K=B$, in particular $\mathcal{E}:\{0,1\}^{\ell} \times\{0,1\}^{\ell} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{\ell}$. Define $H\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}\right) \in\{0,1\}^{\ell}$ with $x_{i} \in B$ recursively by setting $H(\emptyset)=0$ and

$$
H\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}\right)=\mathcal{E}_{h}\left(x_{r}\right)+h, \text { where } h=H\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r-1}\right) .
$$

The widely used SHA1 : $\{0,1\}^{\bullet} \rightarrow\{0,1\}^{160}$ hash function is such an example. The details are too technical. For the SHA3 competition cf. [NIS07].

Example 3.4. Let $p$ be a prime number such that $q:=\frac{p-1}{2}$ is also prime. Further let $b \in \mathbb{F}_{p}^{*}=\langle a\rangle$. Define the function

$$
f:\{0, \ldots, q-1\} \times\{0, \ldots, q-1\} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{p}^{*},(x, y) \mapsto a^{x} b^{y}
$$

As in the previous example, one can use $f$ to construct a hash function. We claim that finding a collision of $f$ implies computing the DL $\log _{a} b$.

Proof. Let $a^{x} b^{y}=a^{x^{\prime}} b^{y^{\prime}}$ be a collision of $f\left((x, y) \neq\left(x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}\right)\right.$. If $y=y^{\prime}$ then $a^{x}=a^{x^{\prime}}$ and $x=x^{\prime}$ 2. So $y \neq y^{\prime}$. Let $z:=\log _{a} b$. $a^{x-x^{\prime}}=b^{y^{\prime}-y} \Longrightarrow x-x^{\prime} \equiv z\left(y^{\prime}-y\right) \bmod p-1$ can be solved to obtain $z$.

## 4. Signatures using OWF without trapdoors

4.a. Elgamal signature scheme. Let $G=\langle g\rangle$ be a cyclic group of order $N$ generated by $g$. Further let $f: G \rightarrow\{0,1\}$ • be a binary representation of the elements of $G$ and $H:\{0,1\} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} / N \mathbb{Z}$ a collision resistant hash function. The Elgamal signature scheme is defined by setting:

- $M=\{0,1\}$.
- $S=G \times \mathbb{Z} / N \mathbb{Z}$.
- $K^{\prime}=\{d=(g, a) \mid a \in \mathbb{Z} / N \mathbb{Z}\} \xrightarrow{\kappa}\{e=(g, y) \mid y \in G\}=K,(g, a) \mapsto\left(g, g^{a}\right)$.
- $\mathcal{S}_{(g, a)}:\{0,1\} \bullet \rightsquigarrow \times \mathbb{Z} / N \mathbb{Z}, m \mapsto \sigma$ with $\sigma$ defined as follows:
- Choose randomly an $k \in(\mathbb{Z} / N \mathbb{Z})^{*}$.
- Set $r:=g^{k} \in G$.
- Set $s:=k^{-1}(H(m)+a H(f(r)) \in \mathbb{Z} / N \mathbb{Z}$.
$-\sigma:=(r, s)$.
- $\mathcal{V}_{(g, y)}:\{0,1\} \bullet \times(G \times \mathbb{Z} / N \mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow\{0,1\},(m,(r, s)) \mapsto\left\{\begin{array}{ll}1 & \text { if } g^{H(m)} y^{H(f(r))}=r^{s} \\ 0 & \text { otherwise }\end{array}\right.$.

Proof of CORRECTNESS. $r^{s}=g^{H(m)} y^{H(f(r))} \Longleftrightarrow \quad k s=H(m)+a H(f(r)) \Longleftrightarrow$ $s=k^{-1}(H(m)+a H(f(r)))$.
4.b. ECDSA. We end by describing the elliptic curve version of the digital signature algorithms (ECDSA). Choose an an elliptic curve $E$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ with $E\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)=\langle P\rangle$ of large prime order $N$ (this assumption can be relaxed, see [Was08, §6.6]). Choose a secret random integer $a$ and compute $Q=a P$ and publish $\left(E, \mathbb{F}_{q}, N, P, Q\right)$. To sign a message with hash value $m \in \mathbb{Z} / N \mathbb{Z}$ :

- Choose a random integer $1 \leq k<N$ and compute $R=k P=(x, y)$.
- Compute $s=k^{-1}(m+a x) \bmod N$.
- The signature is $(m, R, s)$.

To verify the signature do the following:

- Compute $u_{1}=s^{-1} m \bmod N$ and $u_{2}=s^{-1} x \bmod N$.
- Compute $V=u_{1} P+u_{2} Q$.
- The signature is valid if $V=R$.

Proof of Correctness. $V=u_{1} P+u_{2} Q=s^{-1} m P+s^{-1} x Q=s^{-1}(m P+x a P)=$ $k P=R$.

## APPENDIX A

## Some analysis

## 1. Real functions

## 1.a. JENSEN's inequality.

Lemma 1.1. Jensen's inequality Let $f: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a strictly concave, i.e., $\frac{f(x)+f(y)}{2}<$ $f\left(\frac{x+y}{2}\right)$ for all $x, y \in I$ with $\left.x \neq y\right)$. Then for all $a_{i}>0$ with $\sum_{i} a_{i}=1$ and all $x_{i} \in I$ $(i=1, \ldots, n)$

$$
\sum_{i} a_{i} f\left(x_{i}\right) \leq f\left(\sum_{i} a_{i} x_{i}\right) .
$$

Equality holds only if $x_{1}=\ldots=x_{n}$.
1.b. The normal distribution. Recall the normal distribution $N(\mu, \sigma)$ with expected value $\mu$ and variance $\sigma$ is given by the GaUSSian density function

$$
f(x)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^{2}}
$$

$N(0,1)$ is called the standard normal distribution.
If $X$ is $N(0,1)$ distributed and $x>0$ then

$$
\mu_{X}((-x, x))=\operatorname{erf}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}\right)
$$

where

$$
\operatorname{erf}(x):=\frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_{0}^{x} e^{-s^{2}} d s
$$

is the Gaussian error function. The function erfc :=1-erf is called the complementary GaUSSian error function:

$$
\mu_{X}(\mathbb{R} \backslash(-x, x))=\operatorname{erfc}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}\right)
$$

## Bibliography

[Bar10] Mohamed Barakat, Cryptography - Lecture course held at the University of Kaiserslautern, 2010, (http://www.mathematik.uni-kl.de/~barakat/Lehre/WS10/Cryptography/). 45
[Buc08] Johannes Buchmann, Einführung in die kryptographie, Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg, 2008.
[GAP08] The GAP Group, GAP - Groups, Algorithms, and Programming, Version 4.4.12, 2008, (http://www.gap-system.org).
[Har77] Robin Hartshorne, Algebraic geometry, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1977, Graduate Texts in Mathematics, No. 52. MR MR0463157 (57 \#3116) 86
$\left[\mathrm{KAF}^{+} 10\right]$ Thorsten Kleinjung, Kazumaro Aoki, Jens Franke, Arjen Lenstra, Emmanuel Thomé, Joppe Bos, Pierrick Gaudry, Alexander Kruppa, Peter Montgomery, Dag Arne Osvik, Herman te Riele, Andrey Timofeev, and Paul Zimmermann, Factorization of a 768-bit rsa modulus, Cryptology ePrint Archive, Report 2010/006, 2010, http://eprint.iacr.org/2010/006. 73
[KK10] Christian Karpfinger and Hubert Kiechle, Kryptologie, Vieweg + Teubner, Wiesbaden, 2010, Algebraische Methoden und Algorithmen. [Algebraic methods and algorithms]. MR 2650160
[Kob98] Neal Koblitz, Algebraic aspects of cryptography, Algorithms and Computation in Mathematics, vol. 3, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1998, With an appendix by Alfred J. Menezes, Yi-Hong Wu and Robert J. Zuccherato. MR 1610535 (2000a:94012) 90
[MvOV97] Alfred J. Menezes, Paul C. van Oorschot, and Scott A. Vanstone, Handbook of applied cryptography, CRC Press Series on Discrete Mathematics and its Applications, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1997, With a foreword by Ronald L. Rivest (http://www.cacr.math.uwaterloo.ca/hac/). MR 1412797 (99g:94015) 20
[NIS07] NIST, Cryptographic hash algorithm competition of the national institute of standards and technology, 2007, (http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/ST/hash/sha-3/index.html) [Online; accessed 06-February-2011]. 101
[Sti06] Douglas R. Stinson, Cryptography, third ed., Discrete Mathematics and its Applications (Boca Raton), Chapman \& Hall/CRC, Boca Raton, FL, 2006, Theory and practice. MR 2182472 (2007f:94060)
[Tre05] Luca Trevisan, Pseudorandomness and combinatorial constructions, 2005, (http://www.cs.berkeley.edu/~1uca/pacc/lecture08.pdf) [Online; accessed 12-December-2010]. 42
[Vau06] Serge Vaudenay, A classical introduction to cryptography, Springer, New York, 2006, Applications for communications security. MR 2171694 (2007b:94257)
[Was08] Lawrence C. Washington, Elliptic curves, second ed., Discrete Mathematics and its Applications (Boca Raton), Chapman \& Hall/CRC, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, Number theory and cryptography. MR MR2404461 (2009b:11101) 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 96, 97, 102
[Wik10a] Wikipedia, Advanced encryption standard - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2010, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Advanced_Encryption_Standard) [Online; accessed 12-December-2010]. 45
[Wik10b] _ Alternating step generator - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2010, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alternating_step_generator) [Online; accessed 12-December-2010]. 40
[Wik10c] _, Berlekamp-massey algorithm - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2010, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Berlekamp-Massey_algorithm) [Online; accessed 09-December-2010]. 39
[Wik10d] _ Block cipher modes of operation - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2010, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Block_cipher_modes_of_operation) [Online; accessed 15-December-2010]. 45
[Wik10e] -, Blum blum shub - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2010, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blum_Blum_Shub) [Online; accessed 09-December-2010]. 53
[Wik10f] _, Linear feedback shift register - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2010, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Linear_feedback_shift_register) [Online; accessed 24-November-2010]. 24
[Wik10g] _, List of random number generators - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2010, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_pseudorandom_number_generators) [Online; accessed 24-November-2010]. 24
[Wik10h] _ , Rijndael key schedule - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2010, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rijndael_key_schedule) [Online; accessed 09-December2010]. 45
[Wik10i] Run test - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2010, (http://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Run-Test) [Online; accessed 09-December-2010]. 38
[Wik10j] -_, MERSENNE twister - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2010, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mersenne_twister) [Online; accessed 24-November2010]. 28
[Wik11a] Birthday problem - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2011, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Birthday_problem) [Online; accessed 19-January-2011]. 74
[Wik11b] _ Cycle detection - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2011, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cycle_detection) [Online; accessed 19-January-2011]. 74
[Wik11c] _, Feistel cipher - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2011, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Feistel_cipher) [Online; accessed 05-February-2011]. 20
[Wik11d] , Optimal asymmetric encryption padding - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2011, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Optimal_asymmetric_encryption_padding) [Online; accessed 13-January-2011]. 62
[Wik11e] _, Rsa numbers - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2011, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RSA_numbers) [Online; accessed 19-January-2011]. 73
[Wik11f] - Tonelli-shanks algorithm - Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, 2011, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tonelli-Shanks_algorithm) [Online; accessed 05-February-2011]. 51
[GBM] Goldwasser, Bellare, and Mit, Lecture notes on cryptography, Script.
[Gol] Goldreich, Pseusorandom generators, Script.
[Gol05] Oded Goldreich, Foundations of cryptography - a primer, Found. Trends Theor. Comput. Sci. 1 (2005), no. 1, 1-116. MR 2379506 (2010d:94086)
[KK10] Christian Karpfinger and Hubert Kiechle, Kryptologie, Vieweg + Teubner, Wiesbaden, 2010, Algebraische Methoden und Algorithmen. [Algebraic methods and algorithms]. MR 2650160 (2011c:94001)
[Kob98] Neal Koblitz, Algebraic aspects of cryptography, Algorithms and Computation in Mathematics, vol. 3, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1998, With an appendix by Alfred J. Menezes, Yi-Hong Wu and Robert J. Zuccherato. MR 1610535 (2000a:94012)
[MvOV97] Alfred J. Menezes, Paul C. van Oorschot, and Scott A. Vanstone, Handbook of applied cryptography, CRC Press Series on Discrete Mathematics and its Applications, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1997, With a foreword by Ronald L. Rivest. MR 1412797 (99g:94015)
[BNS10] Albrecht Beutelspacher, Heike B. Neumann, and Thomas Schwarzpaul, Kryptografie in Theorie und Praxis, revised ed., Vieweg + Teubner, Wiesbaden, 2010, Mathematische Grundlagen für Internetsicherheit, Mobilfunk und elektronisches Geld. [Mathematical foundations for internet security, cellular phone networks and electronic money]. MR 2643186 (2011b:94027)
[Buc04] Johannes Buchmann, Introduction to cryptography, second ed., Undergraduate Texts in Mathematics, Springer-Verlag, New York, 2004. MR 2075209 (2005f:94084)
[DK07] Hans Delfs and Helmut Knebl, Introduction to cryptography, second ed., Information Security and Cryptography, Springer, Berlin, 2007, Principles and applications. MR 2345767 (2008e:94026)
[Gol05] Oded Goldreich, Foundations of cryptography - a primer, Found. Trends Theor. Comput. Sci. 1 (2005), no. 1, 1-116. MR 2379506 (2010d:94086)
[Gol10] _ A primer on pseudorandom generators, University Lecture Series, vol. 55, American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2010. MR 2677397 (2011h:68001)
[HT77] Robert V. Hogg and Elliot A. Tanis, Probability and statistical inference, Macmillan Publishing Co., New York, 1977. MR 0426223 ( 54 \#14169)
[Kob87] Neal Koblitz, Elliptic curve cryptosystems, Math. Comp. 48 (1987), no. 177, 203-209. MR 866109 (88b:94017)
[Kob94] , A course in number theory and cryptography, second ed., Graduate Texts in Mathematics, vol. 114, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1994. MR 1302169 (95h:94023)
[LN97] Rudolf Lidl and Harald Niederreiter, Finite fields, second ed., Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications, vol. 20, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1997, With a foreword by P. M. Cohn. MR 1429394 (97i:11115)

[^52]
[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ German: Laufzeit
    ${ }^{2} \ldots$ including reading from the random source.

[^1]:    ${ }^{3}$ E.g. the number of symbols needed to encode the value of $x$. The notion is suggestive although a bit ambiguous.

[^2]:    ${ }^{4}$ A source of headache for ministries of interior and secret services.
    ${ }^{5} 32$ bits $=4$ bytes, the maximum in the UTF-encoding, which is (probably) enough to encode all known human alphabets.
    ${ }^{6} 128$ bits $=16$ bytes, the AES-block size.
    ${ }^{7}$ Requiring $\kappa^{-1}$ to be realized by a polynomial runtime algorithm is not the correct concept as $K$ and $K^{\prime}$ are finite sets in many relevant cryptosystems. In that case $\kappa^{-1}$ is trivially computed by a polynomial runtime algorithm by testing the polynomial $\kappa$ on the finite set $K^{\prime}$.

[^3]:    ${ }^{8}$ German: Sicherheitseigenschaft
    ${ }^{9}$ German: Einweg-Eigenschaft
    ${ }^{10}$ German: Nicht-Unterscheidbarkeit
    ${ }^{11}$ German: Nicht-Modifizierbarkeit
    ${ }^{12}$ German: Angriffsart

[^4]:    ${ }^{13}$ German: Herausforderer

[^5]:    ${ }^{1}$ German: Wahrscheinlichkeitsraum
    ${ }^{2}$ German: Wahrscheinlichkeitsmaß
    ${ }^{3}$ German: Wahrscheinlichkeitsverteilung
    ${ }^{4}$ German: Ereignis
    ${ }^{5}$ German: Elementarereignis
    ${ }^{6}$ German: (diskrete) Gleichverteilung
    ${ }^{7}$ German: bedingte Wahrscheinlichkeit
    ${ }^{8}$ German: stochastisch unabhängig

[^6]:    ${ }^{9}$ German: Zufallsvariable
    ${ }^{10}$ German: Erwartungswert
    ${ }^{11}$ German: gleichverteilt

[^7]:    ${ }^{12}$ German: Umkehrung
    ${ }^{13}$ Using $P$ and $K$ as names for the random variables is a massive but very useful abuse of language. We will do the same for $C$ in a moment.

[^8]:    ${ }^{14}$ German: perfekt sicher (dies ist keine wörtliche Übersetzung)

[^9]:    ${ }^{15}$ We will succeed in getting rid of the assumption $|P|=|C|$ later in Theorem 4.21.

[^10]:    ${ }^{16}$ However, Theorem 4.21 shows that it can be replaced by the necessary condition of Corollary 2.9.
    ${ }^{17}$ We deliberately denote $M$ by $X$ as no confusion should occur!

[^11]:    ${ }^{18}$ See next definition.
    ${ }^{19}$ German: Kodierung. Do not confuse encoding with encryption.

[^12]:    ${ }^{20}$ German: Gemeinsame Entropie
    ${ }^{21}$ German: Äquivokation $=$ Mehrdeutigkeit

[^13]:    ${ }^{24}$ German: Schlüsseläquivokation bzw. -mehrdeutigkeit

[^14]:    ${ }^{25}$ German: aufgebraucht
    ${ }^{26}$ German: Unizitätsmaß

[^15]:    ${ }^{27}$ German: verschleiern
    ${ }^{28}$ German: aufblähen
    ${ }^{29}$ German: Klartextäquivokation bzw. -mehrdeutigkeit

[^16]:    ${ }^{1}$ We identified the resulting $1 \times 1$ product matrix with its single entry.

[^17]:    ${ }^{2}$ German: Begleitmatrix
    ${ }^{3}$ German: Bahn
    ${ }^{4}$ German: normiert

[^18]:    ${ }^{5}$ We suppress the ${ }^{-}$.

[^19]:    ${ }^{6}$ Unfortunately, this name conflicts the notion of primitive elements of (algebraic) field extensions.
    ${ }^{7}$ Although $\bar{x}$ is a primitive element of the field extension $\mathbb{F}_{2} \leq \mathbb{F}_{2}[\bar{x}]=\mathbb{F}_{2}[x] /\left\langle x^{4}+x^{3}+x^{2}+x+1\right\rangle$.
    ${ }^{8}$ German: Gaussscher Bereich
    ${ }^{9}$ German: Faktorieller Bereich

[^20]:    ${ }^{10}$ German: Zwischenkörper
    ${ }^{11}$ German: zerfällt über
    ${ }^{12}$ German: Zerfällungskörper
    ${ }^{13}$ It is not clear how to make this step constructive. From the constructive point of view, we have just assumed that we have an algorithm to factor polynomials in irreducibles.

[^21]:    ${ }^{14}$ German: Zwischenkörperverband
    ${ }^{15}$ German: quadratfrei
    ${ }^{16}$ i.e., it has no multiple roots over its splitting field.

[^22]:    ${ }^{17}$ German: Eulersche $\varphi$-Funktion

[^23]:    ${ }^{18}$ German: stetig (hat zwei Bedeutungen!)
    ${ }^{19}$ German: Signifikanzniveau
    ${ }^{20}$ German: Varianz
    ${ }^{21}$ German: Standard-Normalverteilung

[^24]:    ${ }^{22}$ German: oBdA

[^25]:    ${ }^{23}$ We skipped some details here. For example, since $P$ is defined only for $|s|$ even, $A_{P}$ is a priori only defined for $|s|$ odd. To define it for $|s|=2 r$ we set $A_{P}(s):=A_{P}\left(s_{0} \ldots s_{2 r-2}\right)$. The non-uniqueness of $c$ has to be addressed as well (cf. [Wik10c].)
    ${ }^{24}$ German: vernachlässigbar

[^26]:    ${ }^{25}$ German: Rucksack
    ${ }^{26}$ German: getaktet
    ${ }^{27}$ German: verworfen

[^27]:    ${ }^{28}$ German: Urbilder
    ${ }^{29}$ German: Einwegfunktion
    ${ }^{30}$ German: Hardcore-Prädikat, oder Sicherheitsbit

[^28]:    ${ }^{1}$ German: Blockchiffre
    ${ }^{2}$ Note that we do not require $R$ to be a field.
    ${ }^{3}$ National Institute of Standards and Technology

[^29]:    ${ }^{4}$ The entries are hexadecimal numbers where we dropped the 0x-prefix.
    ${ }^{5}$ German: Rundenschlüssel

[^30]:    ${ }^{1}$ December 2010

[^31]:    ${ }^{2}$ German: wörtlich Falltür, man sagt aber im Deutschen Hintertür

[^32]:    ${ }^{3}$ The equivalence is Theorem 2.18 combined with the chinese remainder theorem and Theorem 2.21.
    ${ }^{4}$ Recall that for an asymmetric cryptosystem to satisfy IND it must be probabilistic with $\mathcal{E}$ multivalued.
    ${ }^{5} f^{\ell}(s)$ stands for its bit-coding.
    ${ }^{6}$ The negation of ASYMMETRY is called "total break". This property only makes sense for public key cryptosystems.

[^33]:    ${ }^{7}$ Cf. Definition 4.9 and Remarks 4.12 and 4.14

[^34]:    ${ }^{1}$ German: Gegner, Kontrahent

[^35]:    ${ }^{2} \ldots$ not the problems. For the "hardness of the problems" you have to invert the arrows. ${ }^{3} g^{0}=g^{p-1}=1$.

[^36]:    ${ }^{4}$ Recall that we already know that for BLum numbers the FACTORING assumption $\Longrightarrow$ SQROOT assumption (cf. Theorem 2.21).
    ${ }^{5}$ German: Polsterung

[^37]:    ${ }^{1}$ This is a special case of EULER's Theorem $a^{\varphi(n)} \equiv 1 \bmod n$, for the case $n=p \in \mathbb{P}$.

[^38]:    ${ }^{2} 2 \nmid n \Longrightarrow 1 \not \equiv-1 \bmod p_{i}^{\alpha_{i}}$ for all $i=1, \ldots, u$.

[^39]:    ${ }^{3}$ Published 2004 in the Annals of Mathematics: PRIMES is in $P$.
    ${ }^{4}$ The right hand side is an identity of polynomials in $x$.

[^40]:    ${ }^{5}$ German: Tschebyscheff

[^41]:    ${ }^{1}$ Of course, the gcd might be $n$.

[^42]:    ${ }^{2}$ German: Schildkröte
    ${ }^{3}$ German: Feldhase

[^43]:    ${ }^{4}$ German: Faktorbasis

[^44]:    ${ }^{5}$ German: Sieb
    ${ }^{6}$ Recall, $\left(\frac{n}{p}\right)=0$ means that $p \mid n$ - so we have found a prime divisor of $n$ and we are done.
    ${ }^{7}$ One says, "which factor over $F$ ".
    ${ }^{8}$ Cf. proof of Theorem 5.2.18.

[^45]:    ${ }^{1}$ German: unendlich ferner Punkt
    ${ }^{2}$ German: unendlich ferne Gerade

[^46]:    ${ }^{3}$ German: Regelflächen

[^47]:    ${ }^{4}$ The most elegant proof uses the theory of divisors [Har77, Chapter IV, Section 4].

[^48]:    ${ }^{5}$ German: Steigung

[^49]:    ${ }^{6}$ Of course, $A$ is finite if and only if its rank is 0.

[^50]:    ${ }^{7}$... depending on your computing resources.

[^51]:    ${ }^{1}$ German: Fälschung

[^52]:    ${ }^{1}$ Wikipedia is a wonderful source of open and easily accessible knowledge. Nevertheless please treat it with care and consult other scientific sources. I cite wikipedia for background material and implementations of widely used algorithms. I do not cite it for theorems or proofs. If you spot a mistake on a page please contribute by correcting it.

